

Owner's Handbook
for Vehicle



The Ultimate
Driving Machine



523i **Owner's Handbook**

525i Congratulations on your choice of a BMW.

530i The better you are acquainted with your car, the easier you will
540i find it is to handle. We would therefore like to offer you the follow-
550i ing advice:

525xi Please read the Owner's Handbook before setting out in your
530xi new BMW. It contains important notes on how to operate the car,
530xd enabling you to derive maximum benefit from the technical
advantages of your BMW. It also contains useful information
which will help you to uphold both the operating safety and full
resale value of your BMW.

520d Supplementary information is provided in the other documents
525d of on-board literature.

530d We wish you many a safe and enjoyable journey,

535d BMW AG

© 2005 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Not to be reproduced, wholly or in part, without
written permission from BMW AG, Munich.
Order No. 01 41 0 159 725
English VIII/05, 05 09 510
Printed in Germany
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Contents

The quickest access to a particular topic or item is by consulting the detailed alphabetical index, see page 228.

About this Owner's Handbook

- 4 Notes

Overview

- 8 Driving area
- 14 iDrive
- 20 Voice input system

Controls

- 26 Opening and closing
- 42 Adjusting
- 53 Child safety
- 56 Driving
- 71 Everything under control
- 82 Technical features for driving comfort and safety
- 93 Lights
- 98 Climate
- 109 Practical interior equipment

Driving hints

- 122 Driving precautions

Navigation

- 132 Starting navigation system
- 134 Destination input
- 147 Route guidance
- 156 What to do if ...

Entertainment

- 160 On/off and settings
- 164 Radio
- 169 CD player and CD changer
- 175 TV

Mobility

- 180 Refuelling
- 182 Wheels and tyres
- 185 In the engine compartment
- 190 Maintenance
- 192 Replacing parts
- 200 Mutual aid

Reference

- 208 Technical data
- 223 Short commands for the voice input system
- 228 From A-Z

Notes

About this Owner's Handbook

We have tried to make all the information in this Owner's Handbook easy to find. The quickest access to a specific topic or item is by consulting the detailed alphabetical index at the end. Consult the first chapter for an overview of your car.

When the time comes to sell your BMW, please remember to hand over this Owner's Handbook; it is an important part of the car.

Additional sources of information

If you have any queries, BMW Service will be glad to advise you.

Information on BMW, e.g. on technical aspects, can also be found on the Internet at www.bmw.com.

Symbols used



Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.



Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.



Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Identifies optional extras or specific national-market items of equipment, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies texts on the control display for selecting functions.

›...‹ Identifies commands for the voice input system.

››...‹‹ Identifies replies by the voice input system.

Symbol for components and assemblies



Recommends that you study the relevant section of this Owner's Handbook in connection with a particular part or assembly.

Your car

When you ordered your BMW, you chose various items of equipment. This Owner's Handbook describes all models and equipment specifications which BMW offers within this particular model line.

This explains why the Owner's Handbook may also contain details of items which you have not ordered. The differences can easily be identified by the asterisk * shown against optional extras.

If your BMW contains equipment that is not described in this Owner's Handbook, Supplementary Owner's Handbooks will be supplied and you are requested to study and comply with them.



In cars with right-hand drive, some of the controls are arranged differently from those shown in the illustrations of this Owner's Handbook. ◀

Status at time of printing

The high safety and quality standards of BMW vehicles are maintained by unceasing development work on designs, equipment and accessories. In rare instances, your car may therefore differ from the information supplied in the Owner's Handbook.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repair



The advanced technology behind this car, for example the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, means that specially adapted methods of maintenance and repair are required. Always have the necessary work on your BMW performed either by BMW Service or by a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel. If such work is performed inexpertly, it could result in consequential damage and thus constitute a safety risk. ◀

Parts and accessories



BMW recommends using parts and accessory products on this car that are specifically approved for this purpose by BMW. You are recommended to consult BMW Service for advice on Genuine BMW parts and accessories, other BMW-approved products and competent advice on all related matters.

The safety and compatibility of these parts and products in conjunction with BMW vehicles have been checked by BMW. BMW accepts product liability for them.

BMW cannot accept liability for parts or accessory products of any kind which it has not approved.

BMW is unable to assess each individual product of outside origin as to its suitability for use on BMW vehicles without safety risk. Nor can suitability be assured if an official permit has been issued for it in a specific country. Tests performed for such permits cannot always cover all operating conditions for BMW vehicles, and some of them therefore are insufficient. ◀



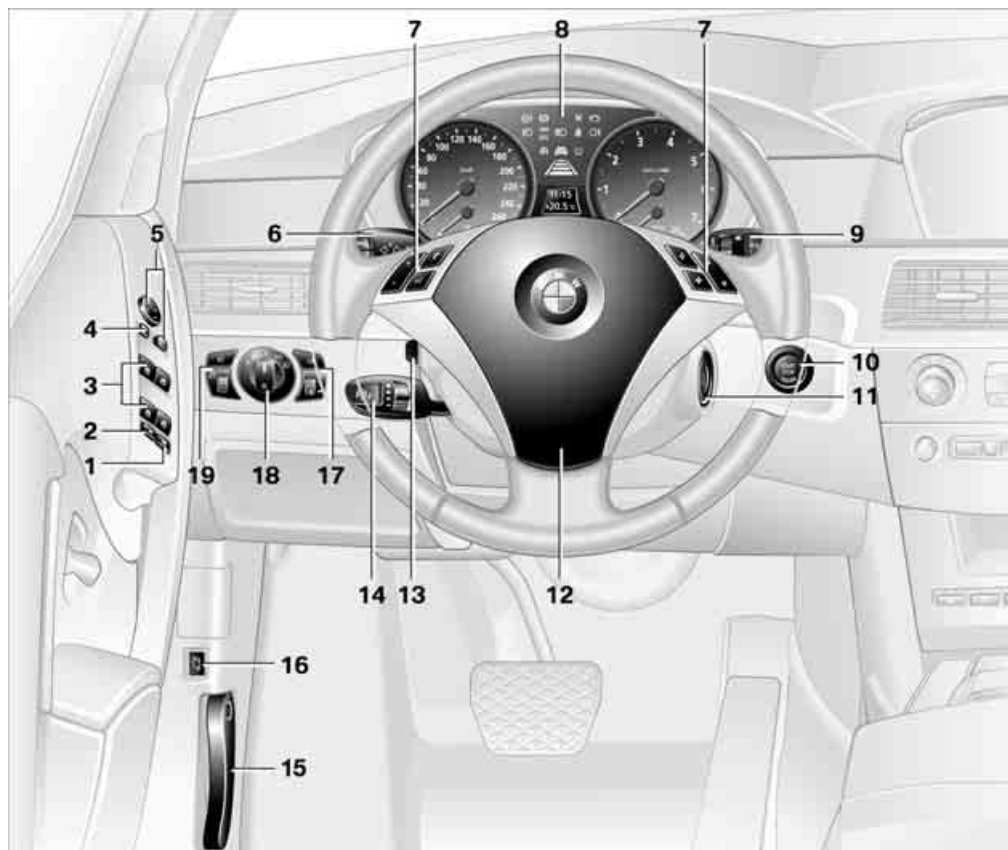


Overview





This summary of buttons, switches and displays serves as an initial guide. In addition, it gives you an insight into the principles behind the various ways in which functions can be performed.

Driving area

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



- 1 Saloon: roller sun blind* for rear window 110
- 2 Safety switch for rear windows 38
- 3 Opening and closing windows 37
- 4 Folding outside mirrors in and out* 49
- 5 Adjusting outside mirrors 49
Parking position function* 50

- 6  Flashing turn indicators 62
-  High-beam headlights, headlight flasher 95
-  High-beam headlights assistant* 95
-  Parking lights 95

CHECK Check Control 76

BC Computer 72

7 Buttons on the steering wheel



Telephone*:

- ▶ Press: receiving and ending a call, dial starting* for a selected phone number and redialling if no phone number has been selected
- ▶ Press and hold down: redialling



Volume control



Activating/deactivating voice input system* 20



Changing radio station



Selecting a music track



Changing TV station*



Scrolling in the telephone book and in lists of stored numbers



Individually programmable* 51



Individually programmable 51

8 Instrument cluster 10

9



Windscreen wipers 63



Rain sensor 63



Touring: rear window wiper 64

10



Switching the ignition on/off and starting/stopping the engine 56

11 Ignition lock 56

12 Horn, entire surface

13



Heated steering wheel* 51



Steering wheel adjustment* 50

14



Cruise control* 64



Active Cruise Control* 66

15

Releasing the engine compartment lid 185

16

Opening the luggage compartment lid/tailgate 33

17



Rear fog lights* 97



Headlight beam throw adjustment 94



Head-Up Display* 91

18



Side lights 93



Low-beam headlights 93



Automatic driving lights control* 94



Adaptive head light* 94

High-beam headlights assistant* 95

19

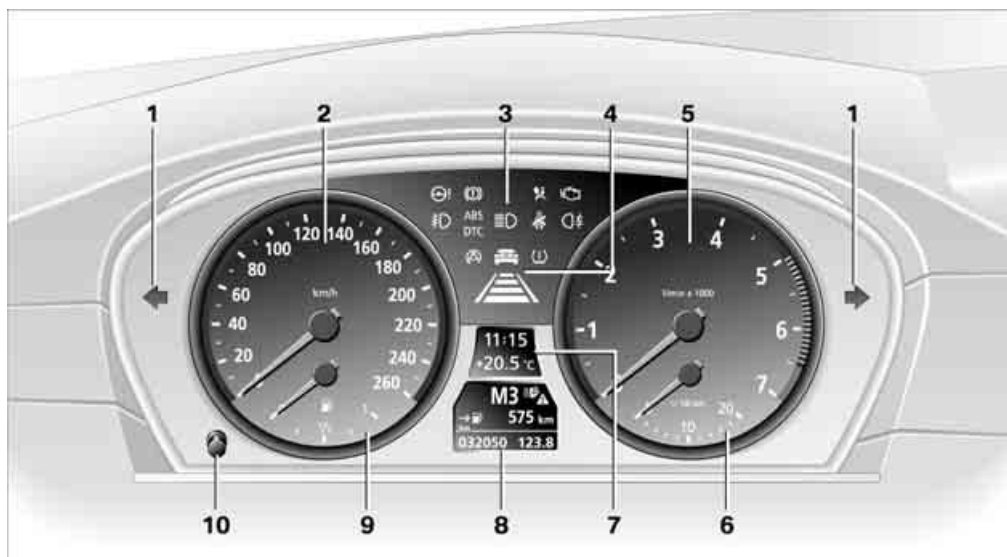


Instrument lighting 97



Front fog lights* 96

Instrument cluster



- 1 Flashing turn indicators
- 2 Speedometer
- 3 Indicator and warning lamps [11](#)
- 4 Display for Active Cruise Control* [68](#)
- 5 Revolution counter [71](#)
- 6 Energy control [72](#)
- 7 Display for
 - ▷ Time/date [71](#)
 - ▷ Outside temperature [71](#)
 - ▷ Indicator and warning lamps [76](#)
 - ▷ Cruise control speed* [64](#)
 - ▷ Desired speed for Active Cruise Control* [66](#)
- 8 Display for
 - ▷ Distance recorder – odometer – and trip distance recorder [71](#)
 - ▷ Computer [72](#)
 - ▷ Date and remaining distance to next Service [74](#)
 - ▷ Automatic transmission with Steptronic* [61](#)
 - ▷ Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG* [59](#)
 - ▷ Hill Descent Control HDC* [85](#)
 - ▷ High-beam headlights assistant* [95](#)
 - ▷ Current Check Control message [76](#)
- 9 Fuel gauge [72](#)
- 10 Resetting trip distance recorder [71](#)

Indicator and warning lamps

Principle



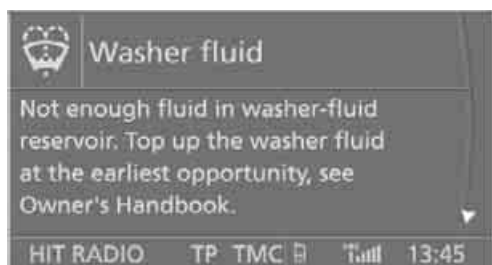
Indicator and warning lamps may light up in a variety of colours and combinations both in the panel **1** and in the display **2**.

Some lamps in the panel are checked for proper functioning and thus come on briefly when the engine starts or the ignition is switched on.

Explanatory text messages



Text messages appearing along the lower edge of the control display explain the meaning of the indicator and warning lamps that have come on.



You can call up further information, e.g. on the cause of a fault and on what action is required, via the Check Control, see page [76](#).

If action is required as a matter of urgency, this information is flashed up as soon as the accompanying lamp comes on.

Indicator lamps not accompanied by text messages

The following indicator lamps in display area **1** indicate that certain functions are active:



Handbrake applied [58](#)



Front fog lights* [96](#)



Dynamic Traction Control DTC [85](#)



High-beam headlights/
headlight flasher [95](#)

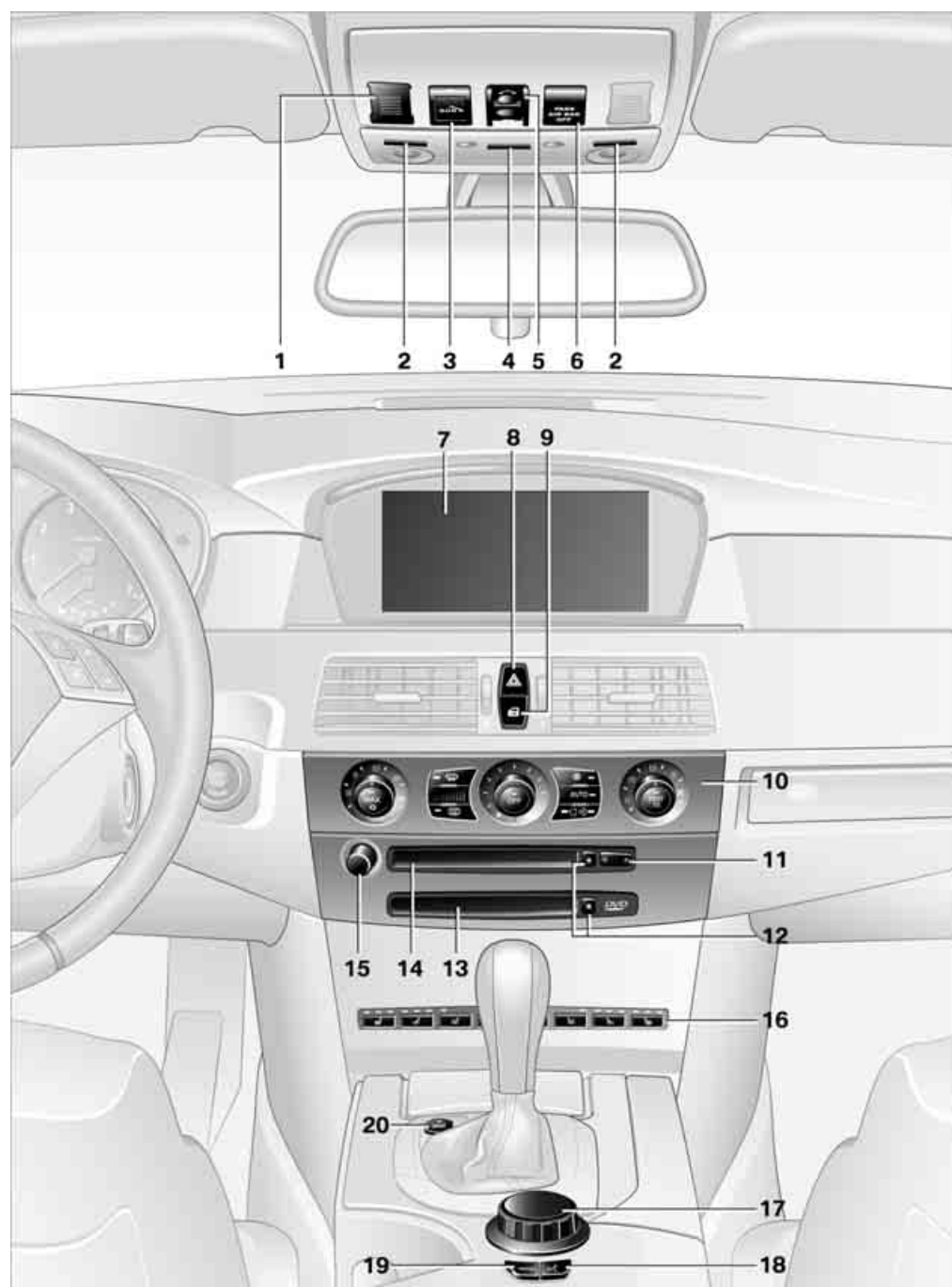


Rear fog lights* [97](#)















Lamp flashes:
DSC or DTC is regulating the propulsive and brake forces in order to maintain driving stability [84](#)







Around the centre console: controls and displays



- 1 Microphone for hands-free operation of the telephone*
and for the voice input system* 20
- 2 Reading lights 97
- 3 Making an emergency call* 200
- 4 Interior light 97
- 5 Glass roof, electric* 38
Panorama glass roof* 39
- 6 Indicator/warning light,
front passenger airbags* 54
- 7 Control display 14
- 8 Hazard warning flashers
- 9 Central locking system 30
- 10 Automatic air conditioning 99
Automatic air conditioning with extended
range of features* 102

-  Temperature adjustment, left/
right 99, 103
-  Air distribution 99, 103
-  Automatic air distribution and
volume 99, 102
-  Cooling function 100, 104
-  Automatic Recirculated Air Control
AUC* 104
-  Recirculated-air mode 100, 104
-  Maximum cooling effect* 104
-  Residual heat utilisation* 104
-  Switching off automatic air
conditioning 100, 105
-  Air volume 99, 103
-  Defrosting windows and removing
mist 100, 103
-  Heated rear window 99, 102

- 11 Changing
 - ▷ Radio stations 160
 - ▷ Tracks 160
- 12 Eject button for
 - ▷ Navigation DVD* 160
 - ▷ Audio CD 160
- 13 Drive for navigation DVD for Professional*
navigation system 132
- 14 Drive for
 - ▷ Navigation DVD for Business* naviga-
tion system 132
 - ▷ Audio CD 160
- 15 Switching entertainment audio output on/
off and adjusting volume 160

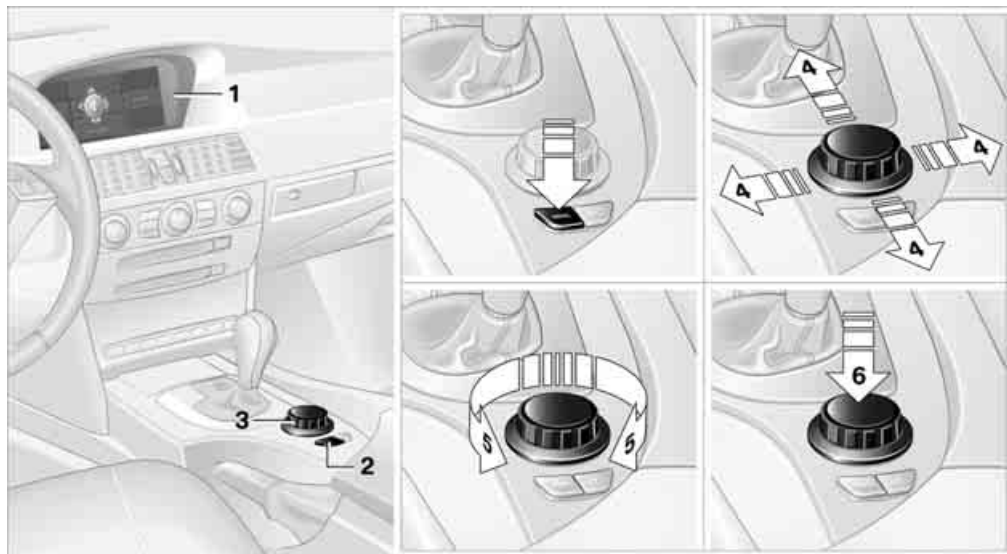
- 16  Seat heating* 48
-  Active seat ventilation* 48
-  Active backrest width
adjustment* 44
-  Active seat* 49
-  Park Distance Control PDC* 82
-  Dynamic Traction Control DTC 85

- 17 Controller 14
Can be turned, pressed, or moved horizon-
tally in four directions
- 18 Activating voice input system* 20
- 19 Calling up start menu on control display 15
- 20 Dynamic Driving Control* 60

iDrive integrates the functions of a large number of switches. These functions can now be controlled from one central point. The basic menu-guided operating principle is explained

below. Details of how to control individual functions are provided under the descriptions of the items of equipment concerned.

Controls



- 1 Control display
- 2 **MENU** button
To call up the start menu
- 3 Controller
You can select menu items and adjust settings with the controller:
 - ▷ Move it in four directions, arrow 4
 - ▷ Turn it, arrow 5
 - ▷ Press it, arrow 6



Only make adjustments if the traffic conditions are sufficiently quiet or clear, so as not to endanger the car's occupants and other road users by being distracted. ◀

Menu summary

Communication

- ▷ Telephone*, see separate Operating Instructions
- ▷ BMW Assist*, BMW Online* or TeleService*, see separate Operating Instructions

Navigation or on-board information

- ▷ Navigation system*
- ▷ On-board information, e.g. to display the average fuel consumption

Entertainment

- ▷ Radio
- ▷ CD player and CD changer*
- ▷ TV*

Climate

- ▷ Air distribution
- ▷ Seat climate control*
- ▷ Automatic program
- ▷ Auxiliary heater/independent ventilation system*

i menu

- ▷ Switching off control display
- ▷ Tone and display settings
- ▷ Traffic information settings
- ▷ Settings for your car, e.g. for the central locking
- ▷ Display of maintenance requirements and dates of next statutory emissions test and vehicle inspection
- ▷ Settings for telephone

Operating principle

Start menu



All iDrive functions can be called up via five menu items.

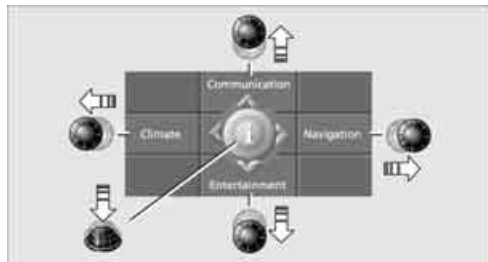
Calling up the start menu

Press the **MENU** button.

To call up the start menu from the **i** menu:

Press the **MENU** button twice.

Calling up menu items in the start menu



Following radio readiness, see page 56:

You can call up the four menu items Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate via the start menu by moving the controller left, right, forwards or back. Depending on the selection, the menu previously called up will be shown.

Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.

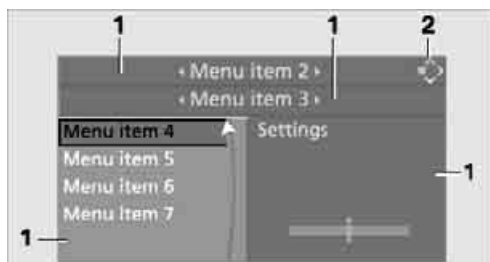
Comfort menu item selection

The comfort selection feature enables you to:

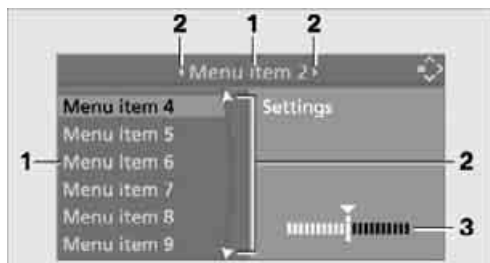
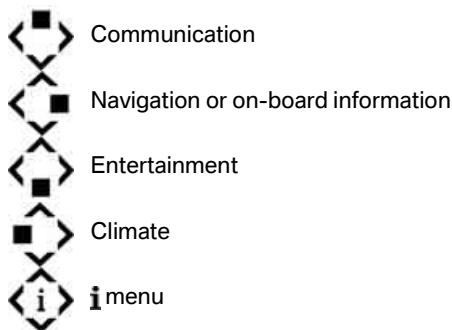
- ▶ Call up a menu item in the start menu in the last configuration used
- ▶ Toggle directly between Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate without needing to press the **MENU** button

To do this, move the controller in the relevant direction and hold it in position for more than about 2 seconds.

Displays in the menu



- 1 Each menu is subdivided into different fields. The field currently selected appears highlighted in the display.
- 2 A symbol shows you which menu item of the start menu was last selected:

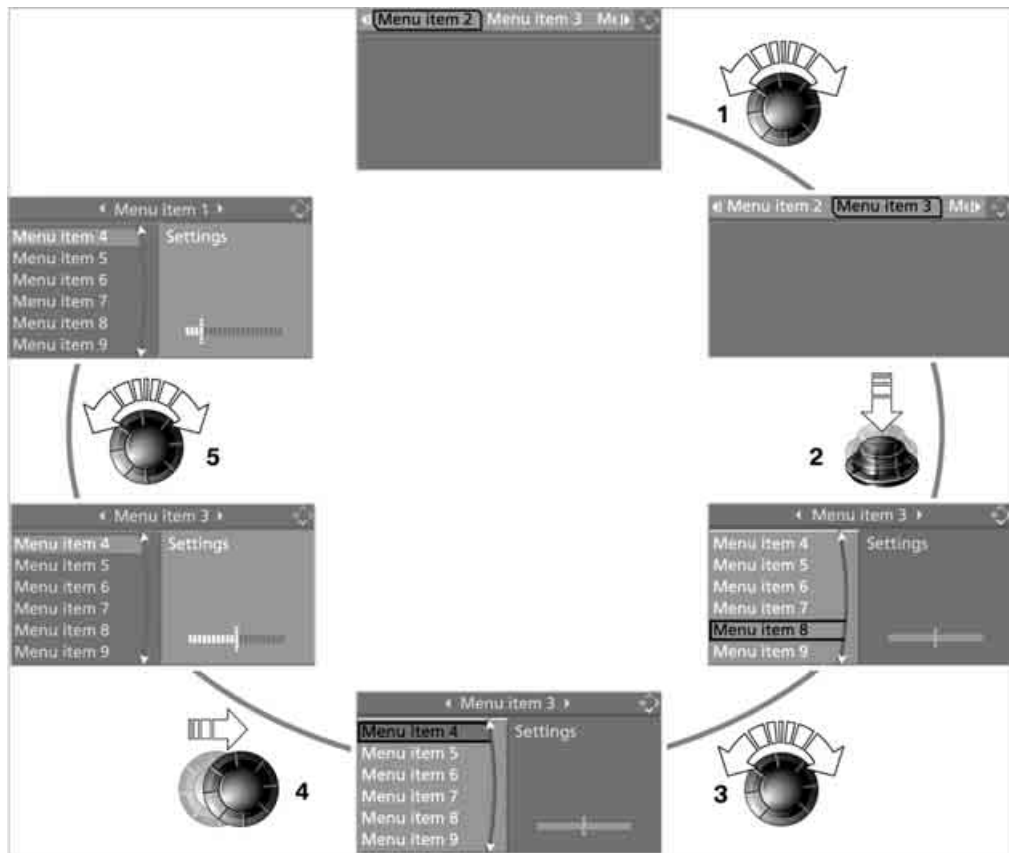


- 1 Menu items are usually grouped in horizontal or vertical lists.
- 2 Arrows indicate that there are additional menu items within a list, but that they are not currently visible.
- 3 Settings are represented graphically or as numerical values.

Operating principle at a glance

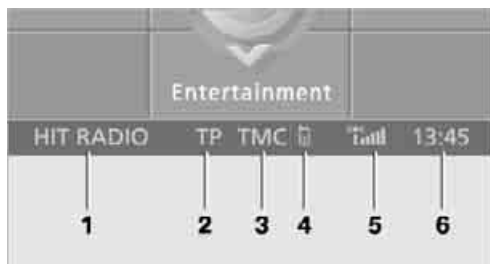
This illustration shows how the car can be operated via iDrive.

The individual steps are explained under Settings on the control display, Setting time, see page 79.



- 1 Select a menu item:**
 - ▶ Turn the controller; the highlighted marker moves
 - ▶ Menu items in white can be selected by highlighting them
- 2 To activate a menu item:**
 - ▶ Press the controller
 - ▶ New menu items are displayed or the function is executed
- 3 Select a menu item: see 1**
- 4 To switch between fields:**
 - ▶ Slightly move the controller to the left, right, forwards or backwards
 - ▶ Release the controller
 - ▶ The active field becomes brighter in colour
- 5 To perform adjustments:**
 - ▶ Turn the controller
 - ▶ Graphic display, numerical value or text displays can be changed
 - ▶ Confirm by changing the field

Status information



- 1 Display for:
 - ▷ Entertainment: Radio, CD, TV*
 - ▷ Telephone*: Name of network operator, no network, or name of mobile phone registered with the car
 - ▷ "Car Phone"*: Active voice connection for emergency calls if BMW Assist is not initialised
 - ▷ "BMW Assist"*: Active voice connection with a BMW Assist service
 - ▷ "Online" or "GPRS Online"*: Active connection with BMW Online*
- 2 Entertainment sound output off or display for traffic announcements*:
 - ▷ "TP": Traffic Programme switched on
 - ▷ "T+": Traffic Programme is switched off but the selected radio station does broadcast traffic reports
 - ▷ No display: The selected radio station does not broadcast traffic reports

- 3 Display for traffic information*:
 - ▷ "TMC": Traffic information for the navigation system can be received and broadcasting is switched on
 - ▷ "Ti+": Traffic info + traffic information can be received and broadcasting is switched on
- 4 Calls not accepted*
- 5 It is possible to use the telephone* if the mobile phone is registered with the car
 Mobile phone network reception strength depends on the mobile phone
- 6 Time
 Other displays:
 Status information is temporarily hidden during Check Control message displays or inputs via the voice input system*.

Assistance window*



Additional information can be displayed in the assistance window:

- ▷ The computer or journey computer*
- ▷ The arrow or map view for cars with navigation system*
- ▷ The car's position*

Selecting display

1. Move the controller to the right to switch to the assistance window and press the controller.



2. Select a menu item.
3. Press the controller.

Switching assistance window on/off

1. Move the controller to the right to switch to the assistance window and press the controller.
2. Select "Exit assist. window" and press the controller.



To turn back on, switch to the assistance window and press the controller.

Switching control display on/off

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Display off" and press the controller.



Press the controller to switch on.

Voice input system*

Principle

The voice input system enables you to operate various items of equipment on your car without having to take your hands off the steering wheel.

Individual menu items on the control display can be selected by means of short commands. It is not necessary to use the controller to select them.

The voice input system translates your commands into control signals for the system in question, and prompts you by means of announcements or questions.

The voice input system includes a special microphone positioned near the interior mirror, see page 12.

Condition


Via iDrive, select the language in which the voice input system is operating, so that the spoken commands can be identified. Selecting the language for iDrive, see page 81.

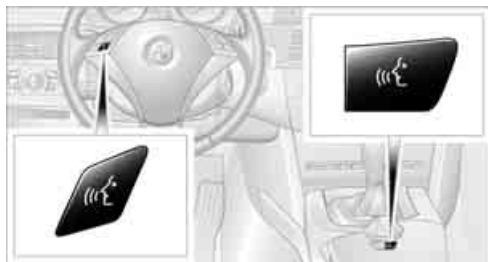
Symbol in the Owner's Handbook

- ›...‹ Say the commands marked with this symbol word for word.
 ››...‹‹ Identifies the replies by the voice input system.

Speaking commands

Activating voice input

1. Press the  button on the steering wheel or in the centre console.




This symbol on the control display and an acoustic signal indicate that the voice input system is ready to pick up commands.





2. Issue the command.
The command appears on the control display.



 This symbol appears on the control display if further commands can be given. If no further commands are possible, continue by operating the item of equipment via iDrive.

Ending or interrupting voice input

Press the  button on the steering wheel or in the centre console or

 ›Cancel‹

Commands

Having possible commands read aloud


You can prompt the system to read out the commands that are possible, depending on which menu item is selected on the control display.

To have the possible commands read out to you:

 ›Options‹

For instance, if you have selected "CD", the commands available for operating the CD player and CD changer* will be read out.

Requesting help

 ›Help‹

Using alternative commands

There are often several different commands available for performing the same function, e.g.:

 ›Settings menu‹ or ›i menu‹


Calling up functions immediately using short commands


Short commands enable you to perform certain functions straight away, irrespective of which menu item is selected, see page 223.

Calling up start menu


 ›Main menu‹

An example: selecting a track


1. If necessary, switch on entertainment audio output.
2. Press the  button on the steering wheel or in the centre console.

 3. ›Entertainment‹
The system says:
››Entertainment‹‹



 4. ›CD‹
The system says:
››CD drive switched on‹‹



5. Press the  button on the steering wheel or in the centre console.



6. Select a music track, e.g.:

›Track 1‹

The system says:

››Track 1‹‹



Notes



More information about voice control of the telephone appears in the separate Operating Instructions. ◀

When speaking commands, note the following:

- ▶ Say the commands and numbers fluently and at normal volume; avoid unnatural emphases and pauses between words. This also applies to spelling a destination entry.
- ▶ Always speak the commands in the language of the voice input system.
- ▶ When selecting a radio station, use the standard pronunciation of the station name.
- ▶ When making entries in the voice-activated phone book, use only names in the language of the voice input system, and do not use abbreviations.
- ▶ Keep the doors, windows and glass roof* or panorama glass roof* closed in order to avoid interference from outside noise.
- ▶ Avoid causing background noise in the car while you are speaking.



A blurred, blue-tinted photograph of a car's interior, showing the dashboard, steering wheel, and center console. The image is out of focus, emphasizing the layout of the controls.

Controls

This chapter enables you to operate your car with greater ease. All equipment items that are of relevance for driving and make your journey safer and more comfortable are described here.

Opening and closing

Key/Remote control



- 1 Remote control with integrated key
- 2 Spare key
- 3 Adapter for spare key, in glove box

Remote control with integrated key

Every remote control contains a rechargeable battery that is automatically recharged when it is in the ignition lock while the car is being driven. Use the remote control at least twice a year in order to keep the battery charged. If your car is fitted with comfort access*, the remote control will feature a replaceable battery, see page 37.

On the basis of the remote control detected when unlocking the car, various settings will be called up in the car and applied, see Personal Profile, page 27.

In addition, information about service requirements is stored in the remote control, see Service data in the remote control, page 190.

Integrated key



Press button 1 to release the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Key switch* for front passenger airbags, see page 53
- ▷ Glove box, see page 111
- ▷ Touring: floor panel flap in load area, see page 117
- ▷ Driver's door, see page 30
- ▷ Luggage compartment lid, see page 31

New remote controls

BMW Service can supply new remote controls with integrated keys, as additional units or as replacements in the event of loss.

Spare key

Spare key, to be kept in a safe place, for instance in a purse or wallet. This key is not intended for regular use.

The spare key and integrated key for the remote control fit the same locks.

Adapter for spare key

You need the adapter to start the car with the spare key or to switch on radio readiness.



Remove the adapter from the holder in the glove box and insert the spare key into the adapter.

Personal Profile

Principle

You can set many of your BMW's functions to suit your personal needs and preferences. Without any action on your part, Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are saved for the remote control currently in use. When you unlock the car the remote control used for the purpose is recognised and the settings saved for it are called up and implemented.

This means that your personal settings are active when you return to your BMW, even if the car was used in the interim by someone else with a remote control of their own and the settings were changed accordingly. Individual settings are saved for up to four remote controls.

Personal Profile settings

- ▷ When unlocking with the remote control, either the driver's door only or the entire car is unlocked, see page 28
- ▷ Locking the car after a short time or after setting off, see page 30
- ▷ Assignment of the programmable buttons* on the steering wheel, see page 51

- ▷ Settings shown on the control display:
 - ▷ Brightness of the control display, see page 80
 - ▷ Units of measurement for fuel consumption, distance, temperature and pressure, see page 81
 - ▷ Language on the control display, see page 81
 - ▷ 12 hour/24 hour mode of clock, see page 80
 - ▷ Date format, see page 80
- ▷ Displaying optical warning for Park Distance Control PDC*, see page 83
- ▷ Selection and brightness of Head-Up Display*, see page 91
- ▷ Air distribution, temperature to upper body and intensity for automatic air conditioning with extended range of features*, see page 102
- ▷ Adjusting spoken instructions for route guidance by navigation system*, see page 150

The last settings of the following items of equipment are in addition called up when the car is unlocked:

- ▷ Position of driver's seat, door mirrors and steering wheel*, see page 45
- ▷ The volume and tone settings for audio and video sources, see page 161
- ▷ The display of memorised stations for the radio, see page 164

Central locking

Principle

The central locking becomes active when the driver's door is closed. The following are unlocked or locked in combination:

- ▷ Doors
- ▷ Luggage compartment lid/tailgate
- ▷ Fuel filler flap

Operating from outside

- ▷ via the remote control
- ▷ via the door lock
- ▷ with comfort access* via the door handles

The alarm system is also operated at the same time. This prevents the doors being unlocked either at the safety lock buttons or door handles. The alarm system* is also armed or disarmed. The interior light and the ground lights* are also switched on or off with the remote control.

For more information about the alarm system*, see page 34.


Operating from inside

Via the button for the central locking system, see page 30. The fuel filler flap is not locked*.


In the event of an accident of sufficient severity, the central locking is released automatically. The hazard warning flashers and the interior light are in addition switched on.

Opening and closing: from the outside

With the remote control

 Persons remaining in the car or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside. Take the remote control with you, so that the car can be opened from the outside. ◀

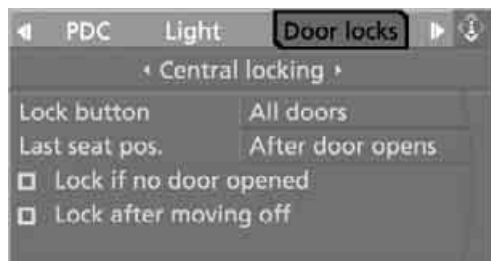
Unlocking



You can unlock the car with the  button, depending on its settings.

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "Door locks" and press the controller.




5. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
6. Select "Lock button" and press the controller.
7. Select a menu item:
 - ▷ "All doors"
Press  button once to unlock the entire car.
 - ▷ "Driver's door only"
Press  button once to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap.
Press it twice to unlock the entire car.



8. Press the controller.


The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

Comfort opening


Press and hold down the  button. The windows and the glass roof* are opened.


Locking

Press the  LOCK button.

 Do not lock the car from the outside when there is someone inside it, as it cannot then be unlocked from the inside in some national-market versions. ◀

Comfort closing

Press and hold down the  LOCK button. The windows and the glass roof* are closed.

 Watch the closing movement to ensure that no-one is trapped. The closing procedure is interrupted immediately if the button is released. ◀


Switching on the interior light

With the car locked, press the  LOCK button.


This function enables you to locate the car, for instance in a parking garage.

Panic mode*


You can also activate the alarm system in the event of danger:

Press the  button for at least three seconds. To switch the alarm off: press any button.


Saloon: opening the luggage compartment lid

Press the  button for about one second.

The luggage compartment lid opens, regardless of whether it was locked or unlocked.

 The luggage compartment lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance. To avoid locking yourself out of the car inadvertently, do not leave the remote control in the luggage compartment. If the luggage compartment lid was previously locked, it will be locked again as soon as it is closed. ◀

Touring: unlocking the tailgate

Press the  button for about one second.

The tailgate opens a short way, regardless of whether it was locked or unlocked.



The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance.

To avoid locking yourself out of the car inadvertently, do not leave the remote control in the luggage compartment. If the tailgate was previously locked, it will be locked again as soon as it is closed.


The load area cover is raised when the tailgate is opened. Before closing the tailgate, press the cover down until it engages in position. ◀




Wrap protective material around any sharp ends or edges of items of luggage that could strike the rear window while the car is moving, to prevent these damaging the heating conductors in the rear window. ◀

Adjusting confirmation signals

You can also deactivate the optical acknowledgement signal for unlocking or locking.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the  menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Door locks" and press the controller.
5. Select "Confirmation" and press the controller.



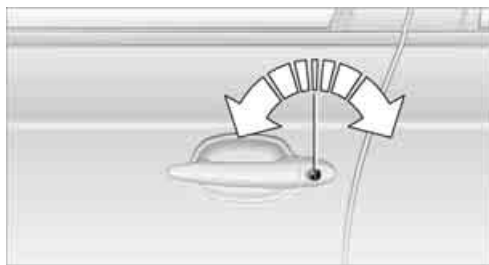
6. Select the desired signal.
7. Press the controller.
 The signals are switched on.


Malfunctions


The remote control may malfunction as a result of interference from localised radio signals. If this occurs, unlock and lock the car by inserting the key into the door lock.

If the car can no longer be locked with a remote control, the battery in the remote control is flat. Use this remote control when driving a relatively long distance to recharge its battery, see page 26.

Via the door lock



 Do not lock the car from the outside when there is someone inside it, as it cannot then be unlocked from the inside in some national-market versions. ◀

 In some national versions, the alarm system* is triggered when the door lock is unlocked.

To switch off the alarm:

Unlock the car with the remote control, see page 28, or insert the remote control fully into the ignition lock. ◀

For further details of the alarm system*, see page 34.

Comfort operation

The windows and the glass roof* can also be operated via the door lock.

- ▷ Opening:
When the door is closed, turn the key in the door lock to the unlocking position and hold it there.
- ▷ Closing:
When the door is closed, turn the key to the locking position and hold it there.

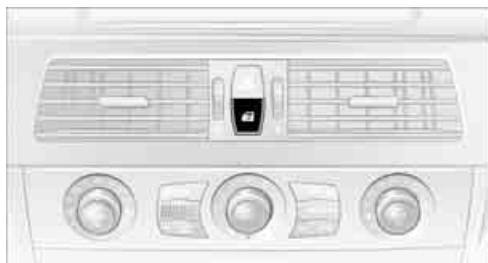


Watch the closing movement to ensure that no-one is trapped. The movement is stopped when the key is released. ◀

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical fault, you can lock and unlock the driver's door by turning the key to the limit positions in the door lock.

Opening and closing: From the inside



This button unlocks or locks the doors and luggage compartment lid/tailgate when the front doors are closed, but does not deadlock them. The fuel filler flap remains unlocked*.

You can in addition select the following settings:

- ▷ The central locking is engaged automatically after a short while if no door has been opened.
- ▷ The central locking is engaged as soon as you drive off.

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Door locks" and press the controller.

5. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.



6. Select "Lock if no door opened" or "Lock after moving off".
7. Press the controller. indicates that the setting is selected.

The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening

- ▷ Either use the central locking button to unlock all doors at once, then pull the door handle above the armrest, or
- ▷ Pull the handle on each individual door twice: the first time to unlock the door, and the second time to open it.

Locking

- ▷ Either lock all doors by pressing the central locking button, or
- ▷ Press down the safety lock button on the door in question. To avoid being shut out of the car accidentally, the driver's door cannot be locked with the safety lock button when it is open.

Persons remaining in the car or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside. Take the remote control with you, so that the car can be opened from the outside. ◀

Luggage compartment lid/tailgate

The luggage compartment lid/tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance. ◀

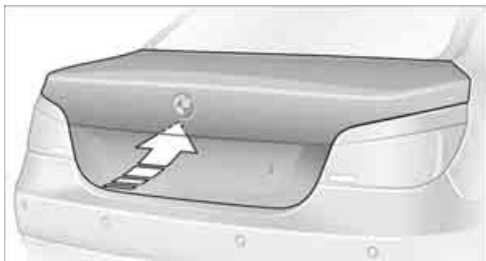
Saloon

Opening from inside

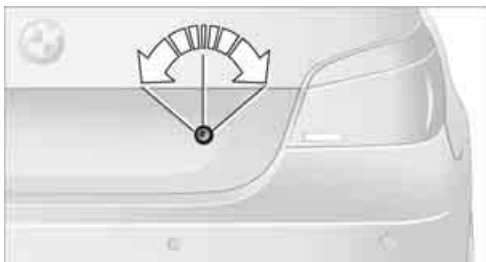


Press the button: the luggage compartment lid will open as long as it is not deadlocked.

Opening from outside



Press the button on the luggage compartment lid or press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second: the luggage compartment lid opens.



All keys, see page 26, fit the lock on the luggage compartment lid.


Locking separately

Turn a key in the luggage compartment lid beyond a pressure point clockwise and remove in the horizontal position.


This locks the luggage compartment lid and disconnects it from the central locking system. If you then give the remote control to a third party with the integrated key, see page 26, it will not be possible to access the luggage compartment. This is an advantage at hotels, for example.

Releasing and opening manually

Turn the key as far as possible anti-clockwise: The luggage compartment lid opens.

 If you open the luggage compartment lid via the lock when the alarm system* is armed, the alarm will be triggered off. You should therefore unlock the car first. If the alarm has inadvertently been triggered off: switching off the alarm, see page 35. ◀

Closing


 To avoid injuries, make sure that the closing area of the luggage compartment lid is unobstructed. ◀

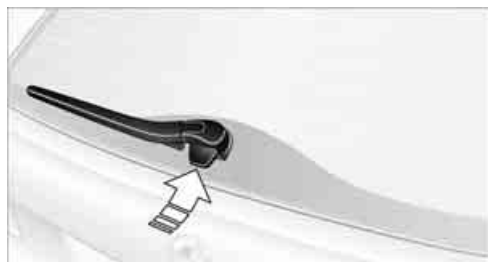


The recessed handles in the luggage compartment lid lining make it easier to pull the luggage compartment lid down.

Touring: opening and closing rear window


The rear window can be opened separately for ease of loading and unloading small items.

 The load area cover is raised when the rear window is opened. Before closing the rear window, press the cover down until it engages in position. ◀



Press the button: the rear window opens a short way. It can now be swung upwards.

Press the window shut to close it.

 Wrap protective material around any sharp ends or edges of items of luggage that could strike the rear window while the car is moving, to prevent these damaging the heating conductors in the rear window. ◀

Touring: tailgate


Opening from inside




Press the button: the tailgate will open as long as it is not deadlocked.

Opening from outside



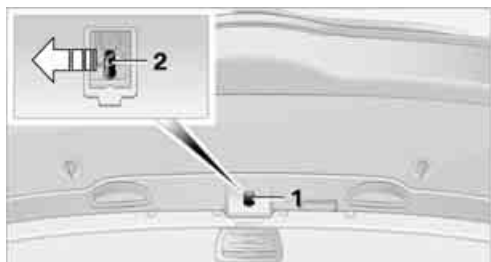
Press the button on the tailgate or press the  button on the remote control for approx. 1 second: the tailgate opens a short way. It can now be swung upwards.

 The load area cover is raised when the tailgate is opened. Before closing the tailgate, press the cover down until it engages in position. ◀

Opening manually

In the event of an electrical fault:


1. From inside the load area, press out the cover **1** attached to the tailgate with a screwdriver.



2. Press the bar **2** in the direction of the arrow.
3. Open the tailgate and press the cover back into place.

The tailgate is locked again as soon as it is closed.

Closing

 To avoid injuries, ensure that the closing area of the tailgate is unobstructed. ◀



The recessed handles in the tailgate lining make it easier to pull the lid down.

To close the tailgate, press it down only lightly. The actual closing action is automatic.

Touring: automatic tailgate operation*

Adjusting limit of opening

You can set how far the tailgate is to open. iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Door locks" and press the controller.
5. Select "Luggage compartment lid opening" and press the controller.




6. Turn the controller. The setting is adopted; you can now change to another field.

Opening tailgate


The tailgate opens automatically if you:


- ▷ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate when the car is unlocked.




- ▷ Press the  button in the driver's side footwell.




- ▷ Press the  button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.


 The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance.◀

To interrupt the opening operation:

- ▷ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate.
- ▷ Press and hold down the  button on the remote control.
- ▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.


 The load area cover is raised when the tailgate is opened. Before closing the tailgate, press the cover down until it engages in position.◀

Closing the tailgate


 To avoid injuries, ensure that the closing area of the tailgate is unobstructed.◀




The tailgate closes automatically if you:

- ▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.
- ▷ Press and hold down the  button on the remote control.

To interrupt the closing operation:

- ▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate
- ▷ Release the  button on the remote control
- ▷ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate

 The closing operation will not be interrupted if you set off in the car.◀

Alarm system*

Principle

The alarm system reacts if:


- ▷ Opening a door, the engine compartment lid, the luggage compartment lid/tailgate or the rear window*
- ▷ There is any movement inside the car: interior movement detector, see further below
- ▷ The car's inclination changes, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away
- ▷ There is an interruption in the power supply from the battery


The alarm will respond briefly as follows to indicate unauthorised attempts to access the car:

- ▷ Acoustic alarm
- ▷ Activation* of the hazard warning system

Arming and disarming

Whenever the car is locked or unlocked, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

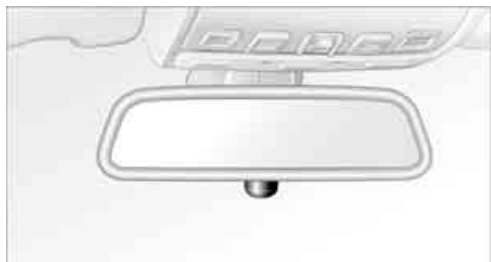
Even when the alarm system is armed, you can open the luggage compartment lid/tailgate by pressing the  button on the remote control, see page 31. When you close the luggage compartment lid/tailgate subsequently, it will be locked and monitored.

 Opening certain national-market versions via the door lock triggers off the alarm. ◀

Switching off alarm

- ▷ Unlock the car with the remote control, see page 28, or
- ▷ Insert the remote control into the ignition as far as it will go, see page 56.

Indicator lamp displays



- ▷ The indicator lamp beneath the inside mirror flashes steadily: the system is armed.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after the car has been locked: the doors, luggage compartment lid/tailgate or rear window* have not been closed properly. Even if an item is not closed fully, the remaining items are dead-locked and the indicator lamp begins to flash steadily after 10 seconds. However, the interior movement detector is not activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp goes out after the car has been unlocked: no attempt was made to tamper with the car during your absence.

- ▷ If the indicator light flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted in the ignition, but for no longer than approx. 5 minutes: an attempt was made to tamper with the car.

Tilt alarm sensor

The car's angle is monitored. The alarm is set off for instance if an attempt is made to steal the car's wheels or tow it away.

Interior movement detector


Before the interior movement detector can operate correctly, the windows and glass roof* must be closed.

Avoiding false alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector can be switched off together. This prevents false alarms, e.g. in the following situations:

- ▷ In two-level garages
- ▷ When the car is being transported by auto-rail
- ▷ If pets are to remain inside the car

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector

Press the  LOCK button on the remote control again immediately after locking the car.

The indicator lamp comes on briefly, then continues to flash steadily. The tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector are switched off until the car is next unlocked and locked.

Comfort access*

Comfort access enables you to access your car without having to take the remote control into your hand. It is sufficient to have the remote control on your person, for example in a jacket pocket. The car automatically recognises your remote control when it is in the immediate vicinity or inside the car.

Comfort access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking the car
- ▷ Starting the engine
- ▷ Comfort closing

Operating requirements

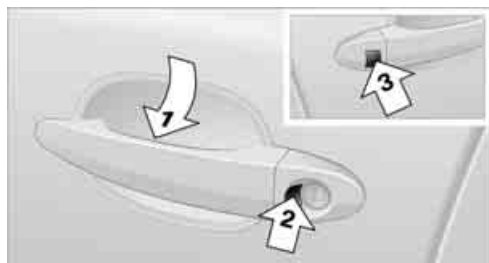
- ▷ The car can only be locked once it has ascertained that the remote control on your person is not inside the car.
- ▷ About two seconds have to elapse before the car can again be unlocked and locked.
- ▷ The engine can be started only when the car ascertains that the remote control on your person is inside the car.


Special features in contrast to conventional remote control

Generally speaking, it makes no difference whether you control the functions outlined above by using comfort access or by pressing the buttons on the remote control. Consequently, you should begin by familiarising yourself with the instructions for opening and closing, starting on page 26.

The features specific to comfort access are described below.


Releasing




Take a firm hold of one of the door handles, arrow 1. This corresponds to pressing the  button.

When a remote control is detected inside the passenger compartment after the car has been unlocked, the electric steering wheel lock disengages, see page 56.

Locking


Touch the area, arrow 2 on the driver's door or 3 on the other doors, for approx. 1 second. This corresponds to pressing the  LOCK button.

For comfort closing, press the area, arrow 2 or 3 with your finger.

 If the car detects a remote control which has been left in the luggage compartment/load area accidentally once the luggage compartment lid/tailgate has been closed, the lid will reopen. The hazard warning system flashes and a signal* sounds. ◀

Switching on radio readiness

Lightly touching the start/stop button switches on radio readiness, see page 56.

 Do not depress the brake, otherwise the engine will start immediately. ◀

Starting the engine

You can start the engine or switch on the ignition when a remote control is inside the car. It is not necessary to insert the remote control in the ignition lock, see page 56.

If you take the remote control with you when you leave the car with the engine running, a warning light will come on. In addition, a message will appear on the control display. As long as the car does not detect a remote control, once the engine has been switched off, you will not be able to restart it for approx. 10 seconds.

Switching off the engine, automatic transmission

The engine can be switched off only when the selector lever is in position P, see page 58.

To switch off the engine with the selector lever in position N, the remote control must be in the ignition lock.

Before driving a car with automatic transmission into a car wash

1. Insert the remote control in the ignition lock.
2. Depress the brake.
3. Engage selector lever position N.
4. Switch off the engine.

The car will be able to roll.

Malfunction

Comfort access may malfunction as a result of interference from local radio signals. In this case, open or close the car using the buttons on the remote control or the key. You can subsequently start the engine by inserting the remote control into the ignition lock.


Changing the battery

The battery in the remote control for comfort access requires replacement from time to time.

1. Remove the integrated key from the remote control, see page 26.
2. Remove the cover.



3. Insert a new battery with the plus side up.
4. Press the cover back into position.

 Dispose of the old battery only at an authorised collecting point or hand it in to BMW Service. ◀

Windows



Observe the windows during the closing procedure, to avoid any injuries.

Take the remote control with you when you leave the car, otherwise children, for example, could operate the windows and possibly injure themselves. ◀

Opening, closing



- ▶ Press the switch until the pressure point is felt:
The window is opened for as long as you press the switch.
- ▶ Press the switch beyond the pressure point:
The window opens automatically. Press the switch again to halt the opening movement.

Close the window similarly by pulling the switch.

For comfort operation using the remote control or door lock, see page 28 or 30.

Comfort closing with comfort access see Locking on page 36.

After the ignition is switched off

You can still operate the windows for approx. 1 minute after the remote control has been removed or the ignition switched off.

Trap protection

If the closing force of a window exceeds a specific value as it closes, the closing action is interrupted immediately and the window reopens slightly.



Despite the trap protection function, make sure that the windows are not obstructed as they close; if this precaution is

not taken, the risk remains that thin objects, for instance, could fail to interrupt the closing movement.


To restrict the trap protection function, pull the switch beyond its pressure point and hold it in position. In this instance, if the closing force exceeds a specific value the window is opened only a short way.

If the switch is pulled beyond the pressure point again within approx. 4 seconds and held in that position, the trap protection function is overridden. ◀

Safety switch




This enables you to prevent the rear door windows being opened and closed at the switches in the rear seat area, for instance by children. When the safety function is switched on, the LED comes on.

 Press the safety switch when carrying children on the rear seat, otherwise careless closing of the windows could result in injury. ◀

Accessories near the windows

If you fit accessories within the window movement range, e.g. a clip-on aerial for your mobile phone, the system must be initialised to teach it the new conditions. BMW recommends that you have this work performed by BMW Service.

Glass roof, electric*

 Observe the glass roof during the closing procedure, to avoid any injuries.


Take the remote control with you when you leave the car, otherwise children could operate the roof and possibly injure themselves. ◀



Raising

Press the switch.

- ▷ If the glass roof is closed, it is raised and the sliding trim opens slightly.
- ▷ If the glass roof is open, it automatically moves to the raised position. The sliding trim remains fully open.

 Do not close the sliding trim forcibly with the roof in the raised position, as this could damage the mechanism. ◀

Opening, closing

- ▷ Push the switch back as far as the pressure point.
The glass roof and sliding trim open in unison for as long as you hold the switch in position.
- ▷ Push the switch back beyond the pressure point.
The glass roof and sliding trim open automatically. Press the switch again briefly to halt the opening movement.

The glass roof is closed in the same way by sliding the switch forwards. The sliding trim remains open and can be closed manually.

For comfort operation using the remote control or door lock, see page 28 or 30.

Comfort closing with comfort access see Locking on page 36.

After the ignition is switched off

You can still operate the roof for approx. 1 minute after the remote control has been removed or the ignition switched off.

Automatic opening and closing

Press the switch beyond the pressure point.


Further to this, the following movements are automated:

- ▷ When the roof is open, press the switch in the direction for raising: the roof moves to the fully raised position.
- ▷ When the roof is raised, press the switch in the direction for opening: the roof moves to the fully open position.

Pressing the switch again stops this movement.

Trap protection

If the glass roof encounters an obstruction during closing from approximately the centre of the roof aperture, or during closing from the raised position, the closing movement is interrupted and the glass roof is opened again slightly.

 Despite the trap protection function, make sure that the roof is not obstructed as it closes; if this precaution is not taken, the risk remains that thin objects, for instance, could fail to interrupt the closing movement. The trap protection function is overridden by pressing the switch beyond its pressure point and holding it in position. ◀

After a power failure

After a power failure, it is possible that the roof will only move to the raised position. The system must be initialised. BMW recommends that you have this work performed by BMW Service.

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical fault, you can move the glass roof manually:


1. Fold the cover down, possibly with the aid of the screwdriver from the toolkit, see page 192.



2. Insert the Allen key from the toolkit, see page 192, into the designated aperture. Turn the glass roof in the desired direction. To close, turn in the direction indicated by the arrow.



Touring: Panorama glass roof*

 Observe the panorama glass roof during the closing procedure, to avoid any injuries.

Take the remote control with you when you leave the car, otherwise children could operate the roof and possibly injure themselves. ◀

Raising, opening, closing



Press the switch or push it in the required direction as far as the pressure point.

The sliding trim is opened:

- ▷ In unison with the roof
- ▷ A short distance when the roof is raised

When the roof is closed or in the raised position, the sliding trim can be opened or closed independently.

For comfort operation using the remote control or door lock, see page 28 or 30.

Comfort closing with comfort access see Locking on page 36.

Vent position

Press the switch:

The glass roof is raised and the sliding trim opened a short distance.

After the ignition is switched off

You can still operate the roof for approx. 1 minute after the remote control has been removed or the ignition switched off.

Automatic opening and closing

Press the switch beyond the pressure point. Pressing the switch again stops this movement.

Opening and closing roof and sliding trim together

Press the switch twice in rapid succession beyond the pressure point. Pressing the switch again stops this movement.

Comfort position

Each time it is fully opened and subsequently closed, the panorama glass roof halts in the comfort position. If desired, the movement can then be continued using the switch.

The comfort position minimises wind noise inside the car.

Trap protection

If the panorama glass roof or sliding trim encounters an obstruction during closing from approximately one-third of the roof aperture, or during closing from the raised position, the closing movement is interrupted and the panorama glass roof and sliding trim are opened again slightly.



Despite the trap protection function, make sure that the roof is not obstructed as it closes; if this precaution is not taken, the risk remains that thin objects, for instance, could fail to interrupt the closing movement. The trap protection function is overridden by pressing the switch beyond its pressure point and holding it in position. ◀

After a power failure

After a power failure, it is possible that the roof will only move to the raised position. The system must be initialised. BMW recommends that you have this work performed by BMW Service.

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical fault, you can move the roof manually:

1. Fold the cover down, possibly applying the screwdriver from the toolkit at the point indicated, see page 192.



2. Take the Allen key from the holder next to the toolkit and insert it into the designated aperture. Turn the roof in the desired direction. To close, turn in the direction indicated by the arrow.



Adjusting

Safe seated position

A seated position that suitably reflects your requirements is a vital condition of relaxed driving with a minimum of fatigue. In conjunction with the seat belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the seated position has a major influence on your safety in the event of an accident. You should therefore observe the following notes in order to maintain the protective function of the car's safety systems.

For additional notes on carrying children in safety, see page 53.

Airbags



Keep your distance from the airbags. Always grip the steering wheel on the rim, with your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to minimise the risk of injury to the hands or arms in the event of the airbag being triggered off.

No other persons, pets or objects should be held or permitted to remain between the airbag and yourself.

Do not use the front airbag cover on the front passenger's side as a tray. Make sure that the front passenger likewise adopts a correct seated position and does not rest feet or legs on the instrument panel, for example, otherwise he/she could sustain leg injuries in the event of the front airbag being triggered.

Make sure that passengers do not use the side or head-level airbags as headrests, otherwise they may sustain injuries in the event of the airbags triggering. ◀

Even if all these instructions are complied with, certain injuries as a result of contact with the airbag cannot be entirely ruled out, depending on the circumstances in which an accident occurs. Occupants with sensitive hearing may be subject to brief and generally temporary impaired hearing caused by the ignition and inflation noise.

The locations of the airbags and additional notes are given on page 90.

Head restraints

Head restraints adjusted to the correct height reduce the risk of injuries to the neck in the event of an accident.



Adjust the head restraint in such a way that its centre is at approximately ear level; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury should an accident occur. ◀

Seat belt

All occupants should always fasten their seat belts before you set off. The airbags are a complementary safety feature and not a substitute for the seat belts.




Never restrain more than one person with each seat belt. Babies or small children must not travel on the lap of another occupant. Pregnant women should also wear the seat belt, making sure that the strap in the pelvic area is well down on the hips and does not press on the abdominal region of the body. The seat belt must not pass across the neck, become trapped at any point or chafe against any sharp edges. The seat belt should not be twisted and must be positioned firmly over the pelvis and shoulder, as close to the body as possible. It should not pass over hard or fragile objects, otherwise the belt in the pelvic area could slide over the hips in the event of a head-on collision and injure the lower abdomen. Avoid wearing bulky clothing and regularly pull the belt in the upper-body area taut, otherwise its restraining effect could be impaired.

Touring: if the centre seat belt is used, the wider backrest must be locked in position, see page 116, otherwise the centre seat belt will not have any restraining effect. ◀

Operating seat belts, see page 47.

Seats


Note before adjusting

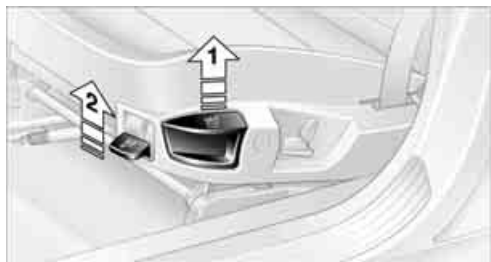
 Do not reposition the driver's seat while the car is in motion. The seat could move unexpectedly, leading to the driver losing control of the car, so that an accident could be caused.

Do not recline the driver's or front passenger's seat back too far, otherwise there will be a risk of sliding under the seat belt in an accident, so that the belt loses its protective effect. ◀

Observe also the notes on damaged seat belts on page 48 and on the active front head restraint* on page 47.

Adjusting manually

 Comply with the notes on page 42, or there may be a risk to your personal safety. ◀



- 1 Forward/back
- 2 Angle of driver's seat

Forward/back: pull the lever up and slide the seat to the preferred position. After releasing the lever, move the seat gently forward or back to make sure it engages properly in position.


Angle of driver's seat: pull the lever up and move the seat until the desired angle is obtained. After releasing the lever, move the seat gently forward or back to make sure it engages properly in position.

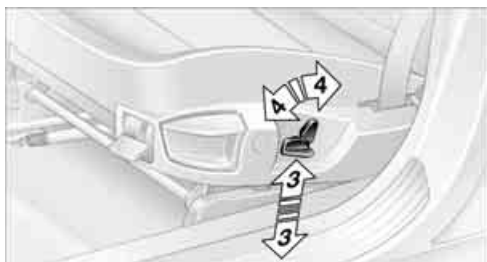
Thigh support*



Pull the lever and move the thigh support forward or back.

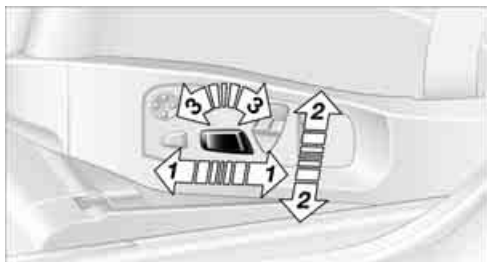
Electrical adjustment

 Comply with the notes on page 42, or there may be a risk to your personal safety. ◀



- 3 Height
- 4 Seat back

Non-standard, depending on seat:



- 1 Longitudinal direction*
- 2 Height*
- 3 Seat tilt*

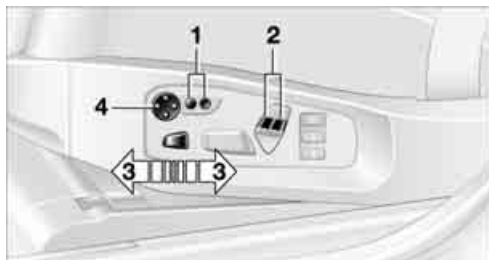


The upper edge of the pelvis and the spinal column are supported, to encourage an upright but relaxed seated position.

- ▷ To increase or reduce the curvature: press switch at front or rear edge.
- ▷ To move the curved section up or down: press switch at top or bottom.

4 Backrest*

Additional, depending on seat:



- 1 Backrest width*
- 2 Shoulder support*
- 3 Thigh support*
- 4 Lumbar support*, see further below

Shoulder support: the adjustable upper section of the seat back supports the shoulder area of the occupant's body. This results in a relaxed seated position and reduces the load on the shoulder muscles.

Adjusting lumbar support*



The seat back contour can be altered to provide more support to the curved, lumbar section of the spine.

Active backrest width adjustment*



First adjust the width of the backrest to a comfortable position, see further above. Using the selected backrest width as the basis, lateral support is automatically adapted to the current driving situation.

The extent to which the backrest is adjusted and the speed with which this takes place depend on the program. You can choose from three programs, ranging from comfortable to sporty.

Each press of the button switches between the programs:

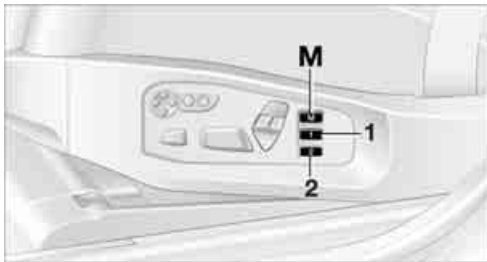
- ▷ "Comfort" program: one LED
- ▷ "Normal" program: two LEDs
- ▷ "Sport" program: three LEDs

To switch off: press and hold down button.

Easy entry/exit*

To facilitate entry and exit, the backrest width is temporarily opened fully.

Seat, mirror and steering wheel position memory*




You can memorise and call up two different positions for the driver's and front passenger's seat*, the outside mirrors and the steering wheel.

The lumbar support setting is not stored in the position memory.

Memorising

1. Switch on radio readiness or the ignition, see page 56.
2. Select the desired seat, outside mirror and steering wheel positions.
3. Press the **M** button:
The LED in the button comes on.
4. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2**:
The LED goes out.

Calling up

 Do not call up the memory while the car is in motion, otherwise an unexpected seat or steering wheel movement may cause an accident. ◀

Convenience function

1. Unlock and open the driver's door or switch on radio readiness.
2. Briefly press memory button **1** or **2** as desired.

The positioning movement is interrupted immediately if you briefly press a seat adjustment switch or one of the memory buttons.

Safety function

1. Close the driver's door and switch the ignition on or off.
2. Press memory button **1** or **2** as desired until the adjusting procedure has been completed.

If the **M** button was pressed accidentally: Press the button again; the LED will go out.

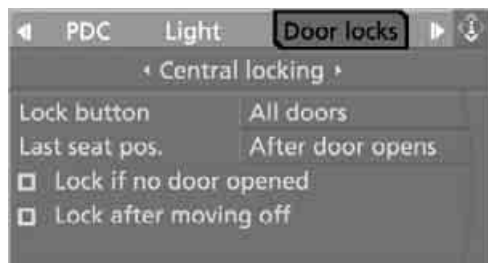
Request with remote control

The last driver's seat, outside mirror and steering wheel position selected is memorised in the remote control currently in use.

You can choose when the position is called up:

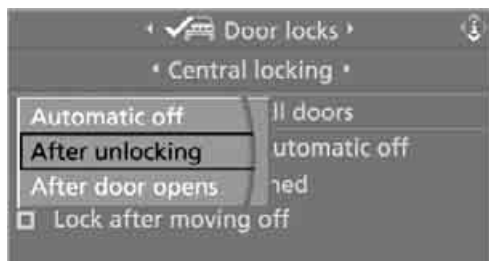
- ▷ Calling up when unlocking the car
- ▷ Calling up when opening the driver's door iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Door locks" and press the controller.



5. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
6. Select "Last seat pos." and press the controller.

7. Select "After unlocking" or "After door opens".



8. Press the controller.

To switch off the calling-up procedure:
Select "Automatic off" and press the controller.

⚠ If this function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is unobstructed. Otherwise persons could be injured or objects damaged if the seat should start to move towards the rear. ◀

Head restraints

Head restraints adjusted to the correct height reduce the risk of injuries to the neck in the event of an accident.

⚠ Adjust the head restraint in such a way that its centre is at approximately ear level; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury should an accident occur. ◀

Front seats: adjusting height

You can adjust the height of the head restraints manually or electrically, depending on the type of seat.

Adjusting manually



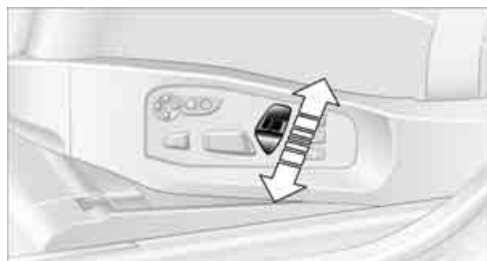
Up: pull.

Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint down.

To remove:

1. Pull the head restraint up as far as its limit of travel.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.

Adjusting electrically*

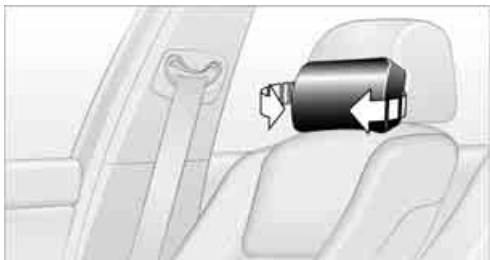


Front seats: adjusting angle

Tilt the head restraint as required.

On the Comfort seat, you adjust the distance between the head restraint and the back of your head via the shoulder support.

Adjusting side sections on Comfort seat




Fold the side sections forward to provide greater lateral support in the rest position.

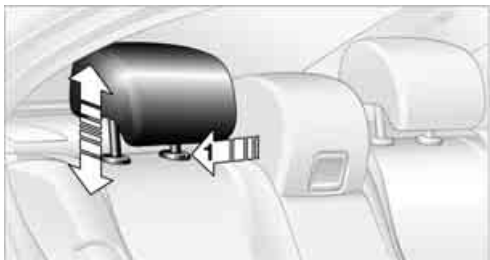
Front head restraint, active*

The Comfort seats are equipped with an active head restraint.

In the event of a sufficiently serious rear-end collision, the active head restraint reduces the distance between itself and the head.

 Do not use seat or head restraint covers or hang objects, e.g. coat-hangers, from the head restraints or attach accessories to the seat or head restraint; this will impair the protective function of the active head restraints, thereby putting personal safety at risk. ◀


Rear seats: adjusting height



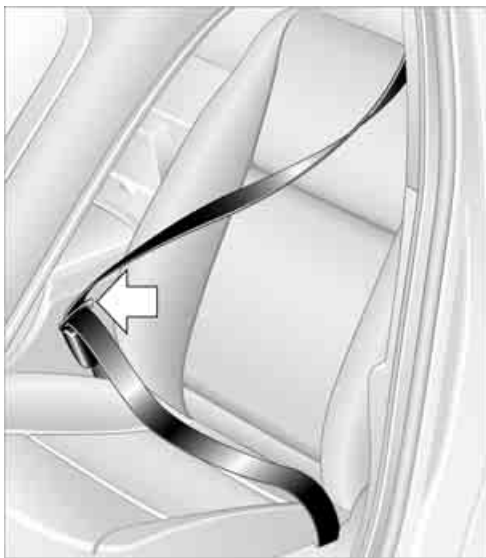
Up: pull.

Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint down.

Seat belts

 Comply with the notes on page 42, or there may be a risk to your personal safety. ◀

All occupants should always fasten their seat belts before you set off. The airbags are a complementary safety feature and not a substitute for the seat belts.



Fastening

The seat belt buckle must be heard to engage.

Belt reminder for driver's and front passenger's seat*



The indicator lamp comes on and an acoustic signal sounds. In addition, a message will appear on the control display. Please check whether the seat belt is fastened correctly.

The 'Fasten seat belts' reminder is issued as long as the driver's seat belt has not been fastened. On certain national-market versions, the 'Fasten seat belts' reminder is also activated at road speeds above approx. 8 km/h, approx. 5 mph, if the front passenger's seat belt is not fastened, if heavy objects are placed on the front passenger seat, or if the driver or front passenger unfasten their seat belts.

Opening

1. Hold onto the belt.
2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt back up to the reel.

The upper belt anchorage is suitable for adults of any stature as long as they are sitting correctly, see page 43.

The two seat belt buckles integrated into the rear seat are intended for the left and right seat occupants. The buckle marked CENTER is only to be used by a person occupying the centre rear seat.

Damaged seat belts



Should the seat belts be placed under strain in the event of an accident or sustain damage, replace the belt system including the seat-belt tensioner and have the belt tensioner tested. Have this work performed only by BMW Service or by a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel, otherwise the correct functioning of this safety equipment is not guaranteed. ◀

Heated seats*

Front



Press once per temperature stage. Three LEDs indicates the highest preset temperature.

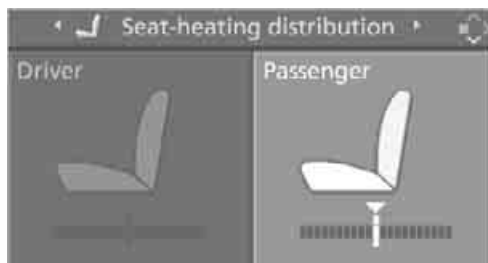
To switch off: press and hold down the button.

Temperature distribution

The temperature distribution between the seat cushion and seat back can be varied.

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to call up "Climate".
3. Select "Seat-heating distribution" and press the controller.
4. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Driver" or "Passenger".



5. Turn the controller. The setting is adopted; you can now change to another field.

Rear




Function as for heated front seats, two temperature stages.

Active seat ventilation*



Press once per ventilation stage.

To switch off: press and hold down the button.

 The highest stage with three LEDs lit is for a rapid cooling effect, e.g. if the car's interior has become very hot. The system automatically switches down a stage after a short time to avoid overcooling. ◀

Active seat*



The seat cushion is actively varied by the right and left halves of the seat cushion being raised and lowered alternately. This helps to avoid muscular strain and signs of fatigue, and thus guards against back pains in the lumbar region.


To switch on, press the button; the LED lights up.

When you switch off the active seat, it may take up to 1 minute for the two halves of the base cushion to return to their home positions.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

The outer sections of the mirrors depict a larger field of view* than the inner sections. In this way, the view to the rear is extended and the blind spot, as it is known, is reduced in size.

 The objects seen in the mirrors are closer than they appear. Do not gauge your distance from following traffic based on what you see in the mirrors; otherwise there is an increased risk of accident. ◀



- 1 Adjusting
- 2 Changing over to the mirror on the other side or to the automatic parking function, see Passenger-side mirror tilt-down on page 50
- 3 Folding mirrors in and out*


To memorise mirror positions, see Seat, mirror and steering wheel position memory on page 45.

Adjusting manually

The mirrors can also be adjusted manually by pressing the edge of the glass.

Folding mirrors in and out*

At speeds up to approx. 30 km/h, approx. 20 mph, you can fold the mirrors in or out by pressing button 3. This can be useful for example in car washes or narrow streets, or to fold the mirrors back out into the correct position after they have been folded in manually. If the mirrors have been folded in, they automatically fold out again when a speed of approx. 40 km/h, approx. 25 mph, is reached.

 Before putting the car through a car wash, fold the mirrors in either manually or by pressing button 3, otherwise they could be damaged on account of the car's width. ◀

Automatic heating

Both outside mirrors are heated automatically while the engine is running or the ignition switched on.

Passenger-side mirror tilt-down – Automatic parking function*


Activating

1. Push the switch to the position for the driver-side mirror, arrow 1.



2. Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position R.

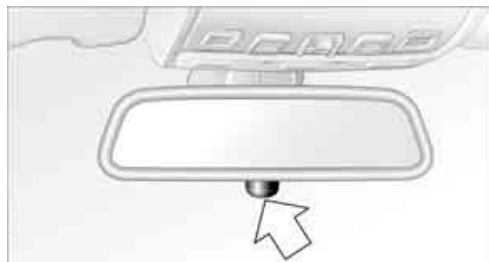
The glass in the mirror on the passenger side tilts slightly down. The road surface close to the car, e.g. the kerb, is then brought within the driver's field of view in the mirror, for instance while parking the car.

 The parking position function is switched off if you are towing a trailer. ◀

Deactivating

Push the switch to the position for the passenger-side mirror, arrow 2.

Inside mirror




To reduce glare from following vehicles after dark, turn the knob.

Automatic-dim mirrors* see page 123.

Steering wheel

Adjusting

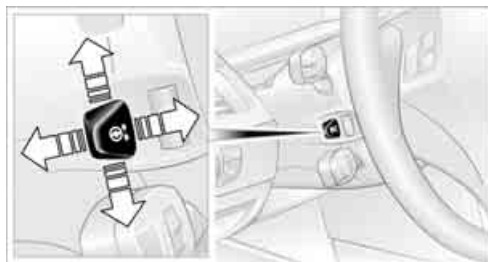
 Do not adjust the steering wheel position while the car is in motion, or an accident may result from any unexpected movement. ◀

Adjusting manually



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Adjusting electrically*



The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

To memorise steering wheel position, see Seat, mirror and steering wheel position memory, page 45.

Electric steering-wheel lock

The steering wheel locks or unlocks automatically when the remote control is removed or inserted, see page 56.

Easy entry/exit*

To facilitate entry and exit, the steering wheel temporarily moves to its highest position.

Heated steering wheel*



Press the button with the ignition switched on. When the steering wheel heating is on, the LED in the button is lit.

Programmable buttons* on the steering wheel

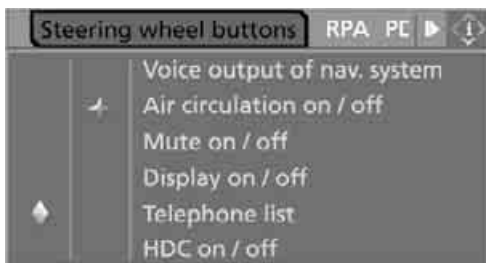


You can program the buttons with a function of your choice.

iDrive concept, see page 14.

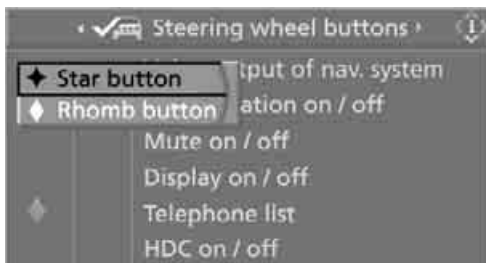
1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "Steering wheel buttons" and press the controller.



A list showing various functions is displayed:

- ▷ "Voice output of nav. system"
Spoken instructions for the navigation system*
 - ▷ "Air circulation on / off"
Permanently shutting off the entry of outside air, see Automatic Air Recirculation Control AUC on page 104
 - ▷ "Mute on / off"
To mute the audio sources
 - ▷ "Display on / off"
To switch the control display on/off
 - ▷ "Telephone list"
Show/hide telephone book or last list of saved numbers displayed
 - ▷ "HDC on / off"
To switch Hill Descent Control HDC* on/off
 - ▷ "Next entertainment source"
To change the audio source
5. Select the desired function and press the controller.
 6. Select a button if appropriate and press the controller.



The chosen function can be operated with the appropriate key.

The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.


Operating a function

Press the appropriate button on the steering wheel.

If you have programmed "Voice output of nav. system" for one of the buttons:

- ▷ Switching spoken instructions on/off:
Press and hold down the button.
- ▷ Repeating the last spoken instruction:
Press the button.
- ▷ With Business navigation system, interrupting spoken instructions during an announcement:
Press the button.


Important considerations

 Do not leave children unattended in the car, as they could otherwise endanger themselves and/or other persons by opening the doors, for example. ◀


All the seats in your BMW, except for the driver's seat, are in principle suitable for the installation of universal child restraint systems for all age groups, provided these have been approved for the age group in question.

Always carry children at the rear

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

 Children under 12 or smaller than 150 cm, approx. 5 feet, should always travel at the rear using suitable child restraint systems, otherwise there is a greater risk of injury in the event of an accident. ◀

Exception for the front passenger's seat

 If you nevertheless need to fit a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, the passenger's front and side airbags must be deactivated, otherwise a child travelling on that seat will be at considerable risk of injury if the airbags are triggered, even if it is wearing a child restraint system. BMW Service will be pleased to advise you on this. ◀

Key switch* for front passenger airbag




You can deactivate and subsequently reactivate the front and side airbags for the front passenger by means of a key switch. This is located in the glove box.

Deactivating

Use a key to turn the key switch to the OFF position.

The airbags for the front passenger are deactivated when the switch is in this position. The airbags for the driver remain fully active.

 Once the child restraint system has been removed, immediately reactivate the airbags for the front passenger so that they can deploy correctly in the event of an accident. ◀

Reactivating

Turn the key switch to the ON position.

The front passenger's airbags are reactivated and can deploy correctly if the need arises.

Functional state of front passenger airbag




The layout of the switches and indicator lamps may vary depending on the car's equipment.


- ▷ The indicator lamp remains on if the front passenger's airbags have been deactivated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp does not come on if the front passenger's airbags have been activated.

Fitting child restraint systems


BMW Service can supply suitable child restraint systems for every age and weight category.

 When selecting, installing and using child restraint systems, observe the manufacturer's instructions, as the protective effect could otherwise be impaired.

Following an accident, have all components of the child restraint system and the seat belt that was used to secure it checked and renewed if necessary. Always have this work performed either by BMW Service or by a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel. ◀

 Touring: comply with the notes on seat belts on page 42, or there may be a risk to your personal safety. ◀


On the front passenger's seat

 Before fitting a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the front passenger side have been deactivated, otherwise the child travelling on that seat will be at considerable risk of injury if the airbags are triggered. ◀

Seat height


Before fitting a universal child restraint system to the front passenger seat, move the seat up as far as it will go in order to achieve optimal placement of the seat belt. Do not adjust the height of the seat with the child restraint system fitted.

Backrest width*

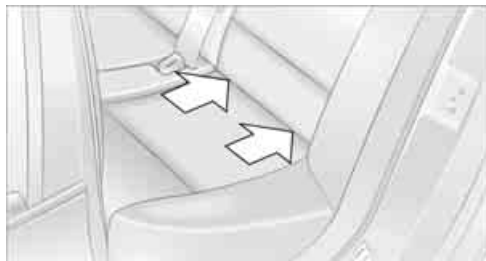
 The backrest width adjustment feature of the front passenger's seat must be fully extended. Once the child seat has been fitted, no memory positions may be called up and active backrest width adjustment must be deactivated in order not to restrict the stability of the child seat on the front passenger's seat. ◀

1. After unlocking the car, sit on the front passenger's seat and close the door in order to call up the memory position.
2. Open the backrest adjustment fully, see page 44.
3. Deactivate active backrest adjustment, see page 44.
4. Fit the child seat.

ISOFIX* child seat mountings

 For details of how to install the ISOFIX child seat, please consult the separate operating and safety instructions supplied by the seat's manufacturer. ◀

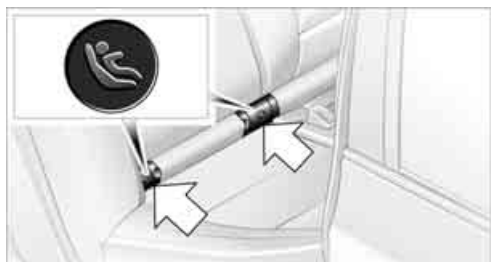
Saloon: rear seats



The ISOFIX child seat mountings are located behind the positions marked by arrows.

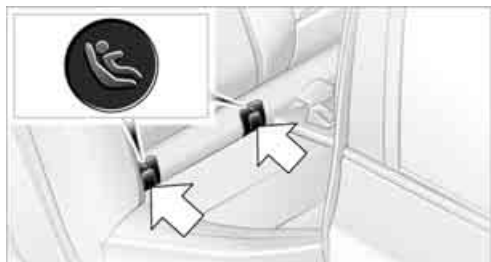
Before fitting the ISOFIX child seat, pull the belt away from the area around the mountings.

Saloon: rear seats with through loading system*



The brackets for the ISOFIX child seat mountings are located behind the caps as shown. Before fitting the ISOFIX child seat, remove the caps and pull the belt away from the area around the child seat mountings.

Touring: rear seats



The brackets for the ISOFIX child seat mountings are located behind the caps as shown and are covered again once the child seat has been removed.

Before fitting the ISOFIX child seat, pull the belt away from the area around the mountings.

Front passenger's seat



The ISOFIX child seat mountings are located behind the points marked with arrows.

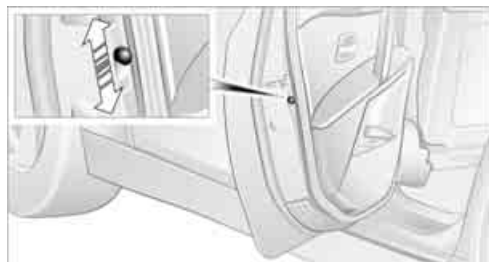
Before fitting the ISOFIX child seat, tilt the front seat down fully* and make sure that the backrest is fully upright, see page 43.

When driving with children

! If your car has rear side airbags, do not allow children travelling in child seats to lean out towards the door trim, as serious injuries could occur if the side airbags were to be triggered. ◀

You can have the side airbags at the rear disabled. BMW Service will be pleased to advise you on this.

Child safety catches in rear doors



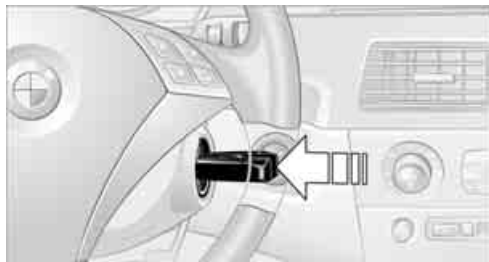
Push down the locking lever on the rear doors: The door in question can now only be opened from the outside.

Safety switch for window lifts

Press the safety switch for the window lifts, see page 38, if children are travelling on the rear seat.

Driving

Ignition lock



Insert the remote control fully into the ignition lock.

- ▷ Radio readiness switches on. Individual electrical consumers can operate.
- ▷ The electric steering wheel lock disengages audibly.

⚠ Insert the remote control into the ignition lock before starting off, otherwise the electric steering wheel lock will not disengage and you will not be able to steer the car. ◀

Removing the remote control from the ignition lock

Press the remote control in briefly; it is ejected a short way.

At the same time:

- ▷ The ignition switches off, if it was on beforehand.
- ▷ The electric steering wheel lock engages audibly.

Automatic transmission

You cannot take out the remote control unless the selector lever is in the P position: interlock.

Start/stop button



Each time the start/stop button is pressed briefly, radio readiness or the ignition are switched on or off.

- ▶ Touching the start/stop button while the brake or clutch is depressed starts the engine. ◀

Radio readiness

Individual electrical consumers are ready for operation. The time and the outside temperature are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio readiness is switched off automatically:

- ▷ Immediately when the remote control is removed from the ignition lock
- ▷ When you touch the sensitive panel on the door handle, if the car is fitted with comfort access*, see Locking on page 36


Ignition on

Most of the indicator and warning lamps in panel 1 of the instrument cluster, see page 11, light up and remain on for different lengths of time.

Radio readiness and ignition off

All indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

Starting the engine

 Never run the engine in enclosed spaces, as inhaling the harmful exhaust gas can lead to loss of consciousness with fatal consequences. The exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless, but highly toxic. Do not leave the car unattended with the engine running, as this constitutes a hazard.

Before leaving the car with the engine running, select neutral or selector lever position P and apply the handbrake, otherwise the car could roll away. ◀

Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine.

Do not warm up the engine with the car at a standstill; it is preferable to set off straight away, driving at moderate engine speeds.



Manual gearbox

1. Apply the handbrake.
2. Depress the clutch and engage neutral gear.
3. Briefly press the start/stop button.

Starting proceeds automatically for a certain time, and ceases automatically as soon as the engine has started.

Automatic transmission with Steptronic*


1. Depress the brake.
2. Briefly press the start/stop button.

Starting proceeds automatically for a certain time, and ceases automatically as soon as the engine has started.

Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG*

1. Depress the brake.
2. Select selector lever position N and make sure that this position is also displayed on the instrument cluster.
3. Briefly press the start/stop button.


Starting proceeds automatically for a certain time, and ceases automatically as soon as the engine has started.

 If the engine does not start, depress the brake and push the selector lever to the right; then engage position N. Watch the instrument cluster display. ◀

Exceptional starting conditions

In the following situations, press the accelerator pedal halfway down when starting the engine.


- ▷ If the engine does not start at the first attempt, for instance when it is extremely hot or cold.
- ▷ If the engine is started at very low ambient temperatures of below approx. -15°C / 5°F or at high altitudes of more than about 1,000 m, approx. 3,300 ft, above sea level.

 Avoid starting, stopping and restarting the engine in rapid succession or repeated attempts to start the engine if it does not fire, otherwise unburned or only partially combusted fuel could reach the catalytic converter, which could overheat and be damaged as a result. ◀

Diesel engine

When the engine is cold and the temperature is below approx. 0°C / 32°F , starting may be delayed by automatic preheating. The preheating indicator lamp lights up on the instrument cluster and a message appears on the Check Control at the same time.

Stopping engine

 Do not remove the remote control from the ignition lock whilst the car is moving in order to avoid the steering lock engaging during steering.

Always take the remote control with you when you leave the car. When parking on an incline, apply the handbrake, otherwise the car could roll away. ◀

Manual gearbox

1. With the car at a standstill, briefly press the start/stop button.
2. Engage first gear or reverse.
3. Apply the handbrake.

Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG*

1. Apply the handbrake.
2. Engage a drive position.
3. Briefly press the start/stop button.
If N is engaged when the engine is switched off, a visual and audible warning will be output to indicate this.


Automatic transmission*

1. With the car at a standstill, move the selector lever to position P.
2. Briefly press the start/stop button.

Handbrake

The handbrake is primarily intended for preventing a stationary car rolling away, and acts on the rear wheels.

Indicator lamp

 The indicator lamp lights up; a signal will also sound when driving off. The handbrake is applied.


Applying


The lever engages automatically.

Releasing



Raise slightly, press the knob and move the lever down.


 If exceptionally it is necessary to use the handbrake while on the move, do not apply it too firmly. Keep the knob on the lever held in all the time. Too violent an application of the handbrake could overbrake the rear wheels and cause the rear of the car to skid. ◀

 To prevent corrosion or an imbalance between the brakes on the right and left side, apply the handbrake lightly from time to time when coasting to a standstill, provided that it is safe to do so.

The brake lights do not come on when the handbrake is applied. ◀

Manual gearbox



 When shifting in 5th/6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right. Otherwise the engine could be damaged if you inadvertently shift into 3rd or 4th gear. ◀

Reverse

Engage this gear only when the car is standing still. When the gearshift lever is pressed to the left, a slight resistance has to be overcome.

The reversing lights come on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG*

Principle

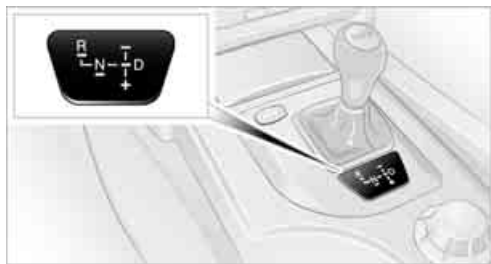
The Sequential M Gearbox SMG is an automated gearbox on which clutch operation and gearshifts are performed by an electro-hydraulic system.

You operate SMG via the selector lever in the centre console and two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

It offers you the following functions:

- ▶ The choice of manual or automated operation: Sequential mode or Drive mode
- ▶ A choice of two driving programs: Normal or Sport, see Dynamic Driving Control page 60
- ▶ Automatic downshifts and protection against gearshifting errors, including in the Sequential mode
- ▶ Acceleration assistant, see page 61

Selector lever positions




You will see the current selector lever position in the centre console.

- ▶ R: reverse
- ▶ N: neutral

- ▶ One-touch functions for the Sequential mode:
 - + : manual upshifting
 - : manual downshifting

- ▶ D: activate/deactivate Drive mode


 N is automatically engaged if the driver's door is opened while the engine is running and neither the pedals nor the shift paddles or selector lever are being operated. This is indicated by an acoustic signal and the flashing N display in the instrument cluster. ◀

Gear indicator



R N 1 to 6

The current gear is displayed, preceded by a D in the Drive mode.

 Only the information on this display will tell you whether the required selector lever position has been engaged. ◀

Shiftlock

Before moving the lever away from N with the car stationary, first depress the brake, otherwise the desired gearshift will not be performed.

R Reverse

Engage this gear only when the car is standing still.

Sequential mode

Every time the engine is started, the Sequential mode is active when you press the selector lever to the right with the brake depressed.

You shift up and down via the shift paddles or the selector lever, without needing to take your foot off the accelerator.

It is also possible to move off in second gear, e.g. on slippery roads.

In the following situations, SMG will take control on your behalf:

- ▷ Upshifts and downshifts are performed only at a suitable engine or road speed; for example, the gearbox cannot shift down if the resulting engine speed would be too high.
- ▷ When you bring the car to a halt, first gear is selected automatically.
- ▷ Shortly before you reach the minimum speed for the gear that is selected, the gearbox shifts down without any action required on your part.


D Drive mode

In the Drive mode, all forward gears are changed automatically.

To change over from the Sequential to the Drive mode: press the selector lever to the right, towards D.

Kick-down: to accelerate rapidly, e.g. for overtaking manoeuvres, press the accelerator down fully. You achieve maximum acceleration.

To change back to the Sequential mode: press the selector lever to the right again in direction D or change gear using the shift paddles or the selector lever.

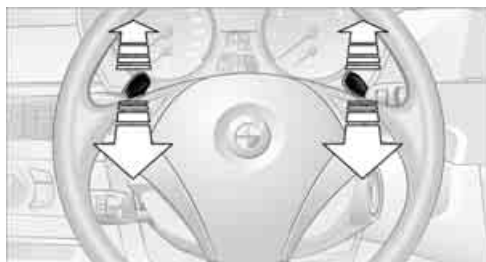
 Drive off quickly when moving off on an uphill gradient. Do not use the accelerator to prevent the car rolling back down a slope; apply the handbrake, to avoid causing the gearbox to overheat. ◀

Gear changes

Via the selector lever

- ▷ To shift up, pull the selector lever back.
- ▷ To shift down, push it forwards.

Via the shift paddles on the steering wheel



- ▷ To shift up, pull one of the shift paddles.
- ▷ To shift down, press one of the shift paddles.

Dynamic Driving Control

Dynamic Driving Control allows you to call up an enhanced sports response from your BMW at the push of a button:

- ▷ The engine responds more spontaneously to accelerator pedal movements.
- ▷ Gear changes are performed more rapidly.
- ▷ The engine's speed range is exploited to the full in the Drive mode.
- ▷ 6th gear is not engaged in Drive mode.
- ▷ Cruise control*: The memorised speed is established more rapidly when called up.

Activating the system



Press the SPORT button. The LED in the button lights up and the SPORT display appears in the instrument cluster.


Deactivating the system

- ▷ Press the SPORT button again or
- ▷ Engage reverse or
- ▷ Switch off the engine.


The LED in the button and the SPORT display in the instrument cluster go out.

Acceleration assistant

The acceleration assistant permits optimum acceleration of the car from a standstill to motor racing standards on high-grip surfaces.

 Do not use the acceleration assistant too frequently, otherwise various components could be subjected to premature wear. ◀

1. Activate Dynamic Driving Control.
2. Deactivate DSC, see page 84.
3. Fully depress the accelerator pedal quickly: kick-down. The optimum engine speed for pulling away is established.

 You should reactivate DSC subsequently to maintain vehicle stability. ◀

Automatic transmission with Steptronic*

In addition to the fully automatic mode, you can perform manual gearshifts with the Steptronic, see page 62.

Selector lever positions

P R N D M/S + –

Displays in the instrument cluster



P R N D DS M1 to M6

The selector lever position is displayed, or the current gear in the manual mode.

Moving the selector lever

- ▷ Do not move the selector lever away from position P until the engine is running: interlock.
- ▷ Before moving the lever away from P or N with the car stationary, first depress the brake, otherwise the selector lever will refuse to move: shiftlock.



Apply the brake until you are ready to move off; this will prevent the car creeping when a gear is selected. ◀



A lock prevents the selector lever being inadvertently moved to the R or P position. To disengage the lock, press the button on the front of the selector lever, see arrow.

P Park

Engage this gear only when the car is standing still. The driven wheels are locked.

R Reverse

Engage this gear only when the car is standing still.

N Neutral

You can select this in a car wash, for example. The car will be able to roll.

D Drive, automatic position

Use this position for all normal driving. All forward gears are selected as necessary.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables you to achieve maximum performance: press the accelerator pedal down beyond the regular full-throttle position; increased resistance will be felt.

Sport program and M/S manual-shift mode



Move selector lever to the left from position D, into the M/S selection gate:

The Sport program is activated and DS appears in the instrument cluster. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

When you press the selector lever forwards or back, the manual mode is activated and Steptronic changes gear. The instrument cluster shows M1 to M6.

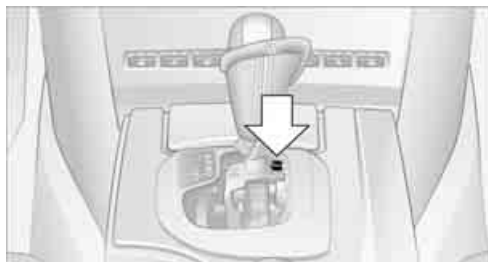
Upshifts and downshifts are performed only at a suitable engine or road speed; for example, the transmission will not shift down if the resulting engine speed would be too high. The gear selected appears briefly in the instrument cluster, followed by the gear actually in use.

To return to the automatic mode, move the selector lever right into position D.

Overriding selector lever interlock

Should the selector lever be stuck in position P despite the button on the selector lever being pressed, the selector-lever lock can be overridden:

1. Unclip the gaiter of the selector lever.
2. Pull the gaiter up over the selector lever until the gaiter is inside out.



3. Using the screwdriver from the toolkit, see page 192, press the red section of the lever while moving the selector lever to the desired position at the same time.

Flashing turn indicators/Headlight flasher



- 1 High-beam headlights
- 2 Headlight flasher
- 3 Flashing turn indicators

Indicating a turn

Press the lever beyond the pressure point.

To cancel it manually, press the lever as far as the pressure point.



If the indicator lamp flashes more rapidly than usual, a flashing turn indicator bulb has failed; if towing a trailer, the failed bulb could be on the trailer. ◀

Indicating a turn briefly

Press and hold the lever as far as the pressure point for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

Triple turn signal

Press the lever as far as the pressure point; the flashing turn indicator flashes three times.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

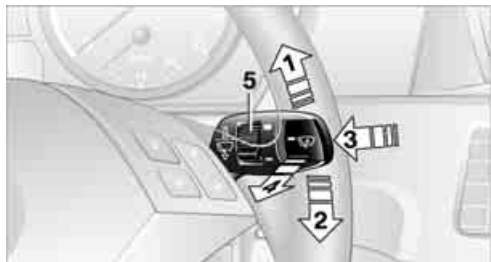
iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Light" and press the controller.



5. Select "Triple turn signal activation" and press the controller.
☒ The triple turn signal function is switched on.

Wiper system



- 1 Switching on wipers
- 2 Switching off wipers or flick-wipe
- 3 Activating/deactivating the rain sensor
- 4 Cleaning windscreen and headlights

- 5 Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity

Switching on wipers

The lever returns to the home position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.

The wipers switch to intermittent wipe as the car comes to a halt.

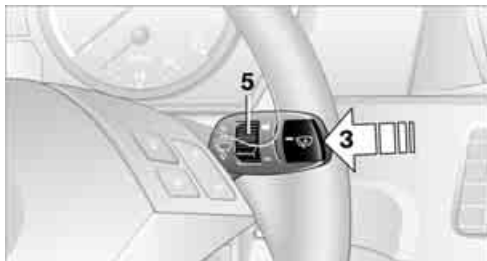
Fast wiper speed

Press twice or press beyond the pressure point. The wipers switch to normal speed as the car comes to a halt.

Rain sensor

The speed of the wipers is regulated automatically according to how hard it is raining. The rain sensor is located on the windscreen, directly in front of the inside mirror.

Activating the rain sensor



Press the button, arrow 3. The LED in the button comes on.

Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity

Turn the knurled wheel 5.

Deactivating the rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow 3. The LED goes out.




Deactivate the rain sensor in an automatic car wash, to prevent the car's wipers being activated inadvertently and damaged. ◀

Cleaning windscreen and headlights*

Fluid from the washer fluid reservoir is sprayed on to the windscreen and the wipers are operated briefly.

When the car's lights are switched on, the headlights are cleaned simultaneously at practical intervals.

 Only operate the washer systems and cleaning equipment if you are certain that the fluid will not freeze to the windscreen and interfere with the view ahead. Screenwash should therefore be added to the fluid, see Washer fluid. Do not run the washer systems if the washer fluid reservoir is empty, or the washer pump will be damaged. ◀


Windscreen washer jets

The windscreen washer jets are heated automatically while the engine is running or the ignition switched on.


Touring: Rear window wiper



- 1 Intermittent operation. It operates continuously when reverse gear is engaged
- 2 Rear window washer

 Do not run the washer systems if the washer fluid reservoir is empty, or the washer pump will be damaged. ◀


Washer fluid

 Screenwash for the washer fluid is highly flammable. Keep it away from possible ignition sources and store it only in the carefully sealed original containers, out of reach of children. Comply with the instructions on the containers. ◀

Washer fluid reservoir



When filling with water, to which screenwash has been added if required, always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

 Mix the water and screenwash additive before filling the washer fluid reservoir, to make sure the correct concentration is maintained. ◀

Capacity

Saloon:


Approx. 3 litres, approx. 5 pints, with headlamp cleaning system* approx. 5 litres, approx. 9 pints.

Touring: approx. 5 litres, approx. 9 pints.

Cruise control*

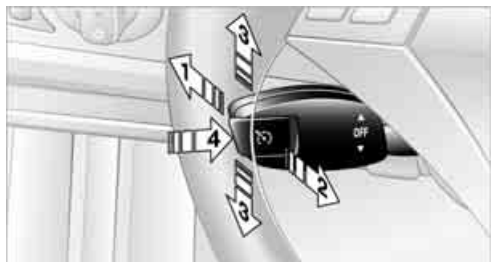
Principle

You can activate cruise control once you reach a speed of approx. 30 km/h or 20 mph. The car then memorises and maintains the speed that you specify using the lever on the steering column.

 Do not use cruise control if adverse conditions prevent driving at constant speed, e.g. winding roads, heavy traffic or poor surface conditions such as snow, rain, ice or loose

material. Otherwise you could lose control of the car and cause an accident as a result. ◀

One lever for all functions



- 1 Maintaining and memorising speed, accelerating
- 2 Maintaining and memorising speed, decelerating
- 3 Interrupting cruise control
- 4 Recalling a speed

Maintaining and memorising speed, accelerating

Press the lever as far as the pressure point, arrow 1:

The car's current speed is maintained and memorised. Display 1 in the speedometer shows this controlled speed, see further below. Each time the lever is pressed, the speed increases by approx. 1 km/h or 1 mph.

Press the lever as far as the pressure point and hold it there:

The car accelerates without the accelerator pedal being pressed. As soon as you release the lever, the speed the car has reached will be maintained and memorised.

Press the lever beyond the pressure point:
Increase speed by 10 km/h or 5 mph.

If engine braking alone is insufficient on a downhill gradient, the set speed may be exceeded. It may also prove impossible to maintain speed with the available engine power on uphill gradients.

Maintaining and memorising speed, decelerating

Pull the lever, arrow 2:

Functions as 1, except that the car's speed is reduced instead.

Interrupting cruise control

Press the lever upwards or downwards, arrow 3.

In addition, you interrupt the cruise control function automatically:

- ▷ When braking
- ▷ When you operate the clutch or engage automatic transmission/SMG position N
- ▷ When DSC has cut in

Recalling a speed

Press button 4:

The memorised speed is recalled and maintained.

Deactivating the system

Whenever the ignition is switched off, the system is deactivated and the speed stored in the memory is deleted.

Displays in the instrument cluster



- 1 Memorised speed
- 2 Selected speed is displayed briefly

Active Cruise Control*

Principle

Active Cruise Control enables you to select a speed which the car will then maintain automatically, assuming your progress is not obstructed.

Subject to reasonable limits, the system automatically adjusts the speed of your car if you come up behind a slower vehicle. You can vary the distance to be maintained from the vehicle in front. For safety reasons, this distance depends on the speeds in question. To maintain sufficient distance, the system automatically closes down the throttle, applies the brakes if necessary, and speeds up again if the vehicle in front accelerates. As soon as the road ahead becomes clear, it accelerates to your desired speed again. The desired speed is also maintained on downhill gradients.

Read and carefully comply with the information on the system's limits starting on page 69 so that you can understand the system's range of applications and use the system appropriately.

Professional navigation system*

If there is a navigation DVD in the drive, see page 132, the system will adapt the way the car is accelerated and slowed down to the road you are currently driving along.

If the car's position is not known, e.g. because you have left the area covered by the map, the navigation system will cease to have an influence.

Braking sensation

The system's automatic brake operation results in a braking sensation that is slightly different from what you feel when you brake the car yourself in a similar situation. Unaccustomed noises when the car is braked automatically are normal.

Manual gearbox

You can shift gears while cruise control is activated. A shift notice is issued or the system is deactivated when you drive for an extended period at very high or very low engine speeds.

SMG

In the Sequential mode, an instruction to shift gear is issued or the system is deactivated if you drive for an extended period at very high or very low engine speeds.

In the Drive mode, the SMG behaves in a similar way to an automatic transmission in position D.

When to use it

The optimum road speed range on main roads and motorways in good condition is approx. 80 to 140 km/h, approx. 50 to 85 mph. Make sure that you observe the relevant maximum legal speed limit.

Ideally, minimum speeds should not undershoot 30 km/h or 20 mph and maximum speeds not exceed 180 km/h or 110 mph.



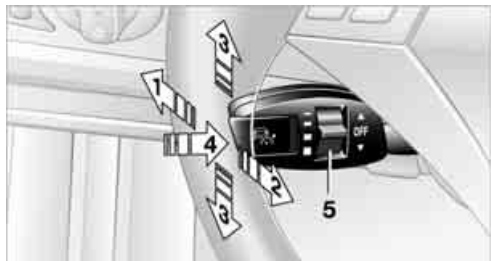
Active Cruise Control does not release you from your personal responsibility to drive safely.

Consider road-surface, weather and visibility conditions to decide whether and how the system should be used.

Use the system only when traffic is flowing smoothly and not on roads with loose surfaces or sharp bends, nor when there is road ice, fog, snow or heavy rain.

Check the speed you are driving at as well as your stopping distance, and remain in a position to apply the brakes at all times. Otherwise operating conditions which violate the law or constitute an accident risk could result. ◀

One lever for all functions



- 1 Memorising and increasing the desired speed
- 2 Memorising and reducing the desired speed
- 3 Deactivating the system, see page 68
- 4 Calling up memorised speed and distance, see page 68
- 5 Selecting distance from vehicle in front, see page 67

Maintaining current speed

Tap the lever, arrow 1, or pull briefly, arrow 2.



The car's current speed is memorised and maintained. It is displayed on the speedometer and appears briefly on the instrument cluster.

The controlled speed may be undershot when driving uphill if there is insufficient engine power. If the engine braking effect is insufficient on steep slopes, the system will apply the brakes lightly.

Setting the desired speed



Adapt your desired speed to the traffic conditions and remain ready to apply the brakes at all times, or there is a risk of accidents. The system is not able to compensate marked

differences in speed in relation to vehicles travelling in front, e.g. if you get too close to a lorry or if another vehicle swerves into your lane. ◀

Stepwise increase

Briefly press the lever repeatedly up to or beyond the pressure point, arrow 1, until the desired speed appears on the display.

- ▷ Every time you press the lever as far as the pressure point, the desired speed increases by approx. 1 km/h or 1 mph.
- ▷ Every time you press the lever beyond the pressure point, the desired speed increases to the next value of ten on the km/h or mph speedo display.

The speed that is then shown is memorised and will be achieved on a clear road.

Stepless increase

Briefly press the lever repeatedly up to or beyond the pressure point, arrow 1, until the desired speed is reached.

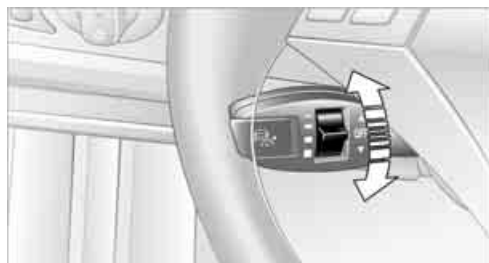
The speed that is then shown is memorised and will be achieved on a clear road.

Decreasing

Pull the lever repeatedly, arrow 2, until the desired speed appears on the display.

Functions analogous to stepwise/stepless increase, except that the speed is decreased.

Selecting distance



- ▷ Knurled wheel turned downwards:
To increase the distance.
- ▷ Knurled wheel turned upwards:
To reduce the distance.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.



Distance 1



Distance 2



Distance 3

When you switch on the system for the first time after starting the engine, this distance is preset. This corresponds to approx. half the numerical value on the km/h or mph speedo display.

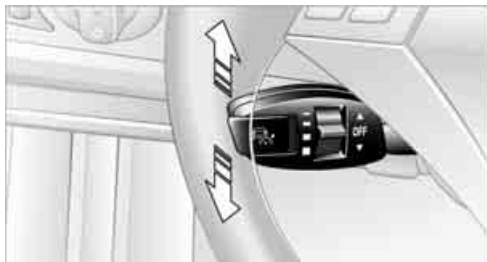


Distance 4



Adapt the distance chosen from the vehicle in front to the traffic and weather conditions, otherwise you may risk committing a traffic offence or causing an accident. ◀

Deactivating the system



Press the lever up or down. The displays in the instrument cluster go out.

The system is also deactivated whenever you brake, shift gears very slowly, place the transmission in idle or move the gear selector lever to position N. In addition, the system is automatically deactivated:

- ▷ When DTC is activated

- ▷ When DSC is intervening or deactivated
- ▷ When the system does not detect any objects for a lengthy period of time, e.g. on infrequently driven roads without defined boundaries or due to a dirty wheel sensor, see page 69
- ▷ When your road speed is less than 30 km/h or 20 mph due to a traffic situation



When the system is deactivated, you must brake the car yourself and/or manoeuvre as necessary, otherwise there is a risk of an accident. ◀

Recalling the memorised desired speed and distance level

Press button 4.


The displays appear in the instrument cluster.

The memorised speed is deleted when the ignition is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster



- 1 Memorised desired speed
- 2 Lights up yellow: vehicle detected ahead
Flashes red, a signal sounds: system cannot maintain distance; driver must brake the car
Flashes yellow: driving stability control systems are intervening; cruise control is deactivated
- 3 Selected distance to vehicle ahead
The display lights up as soon as the system is activated
- 4 Memorised desired speed is displayed briefly

 If --- km/h or --- mph appears briefly on the instrument cluster, the system may not be ready for operation. Calling up Check Control messages, see page 76. ◀

Warning lamps



The display **2** flashes red, a signal sounds.

The system instructs you to intervene by braking and, if necessary, taking evasive action. Active

Cruise Control is unable to restore the distance between your car and the vehicle in front automatically.

However, this display does not relieve you of the responsibility to adapt the desired speed and driving style to the traffic conditions.



Display **2** flashes yellow.

The prerequisites for operating Active Cruise Control are not met, e.g. as a result of ABS or DSC

interventions. The system intervenes by braking until you actively take over.

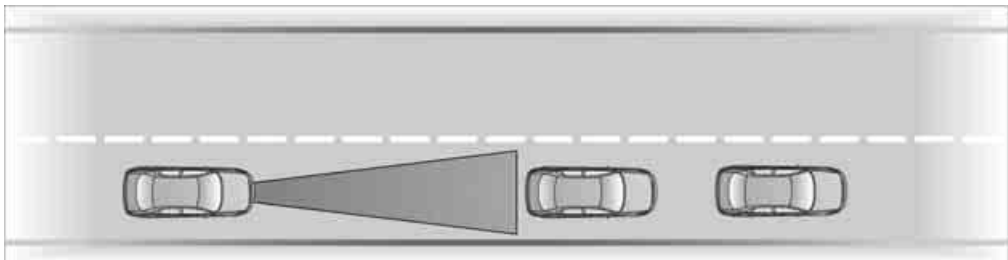
Radar sensor




Heavy rain, dirt, snow and ice may impair the system's ability to detect preceding vehicles. If necessary, clean the radar sensor at the front of the car, beneath the bumper. Take particular care when removing snow and ice.

If the sensor is not correctly aligned, Active Cruise Control cannot be activated.

System limits

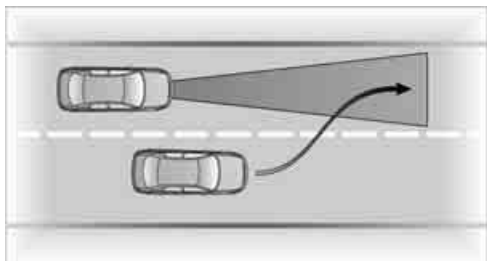


The range of the wheel sensor and the system's capacity for braking the car automatically are limited. It is possible, for example, that two-wheelers in front of you will be detected later than cars.

 The system will not brake the car if you approach a stationary obstruction on your side of the road, e.g. a vehicle standing at red traffic lights or the end of a tailback. You will need to intervene to avoid the risk of an accident. ◀


The system does not respond to oncoming vehicles.

Vehicles pulling out



If a vehicle pulls out in front of you, e.g. after overtaking, the system will not identify the vehi-

cle until it has moved entirely into the same lane as your car.

 If a vehicle ahead suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not always be able to maintain the selected distance automatically. The same applies to high differences between your speed and that of preceding vehicles, e.g. when rapidly approaching a truck. Once the system has established that a vehicle is indeed in front of you, it will indicate that you must brake and/or manoeuvre the car yourself. You will need to intervene to avoid the risk of an accident. ◀

Bends in the road



If the desired speed selected is excessive for a bend, the system will reduce the speed while the car is taking the bend. However, it is unable to anticipate how sharp a bend in the road is. You should therefore select an appropriate speed before entering a bend.

Due to the wheel sensor's restricted range, the situation may arise where a preceding vehicle may not be detected on a bend in the road, or detected very late.




When your car is approaching a bend, in view of its curvature the system may respond temporarily to vehicles in the other lane. If your car

decelerates in such a situation, the accelerator can be used briefly to counteract this effect. When the accelerator is released again, the system will resume control of the car's speed.

Your responsibility

Your actions have priority at all times. When you press the accelerator pedal while driving with Active Cruise Control, the automatic braking function will be temporarily interrupted. When the accelerator is released, the desired speed is re-established or the selected distance from the vehicle in front taken into account.

 Do not leave your foot on the accelerator pedal, and make sure that no objects such as floor mats are resting on the accelerator pedal, otherwise the system will not be able to brake the car. ◀

Everything under control

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock



- 1 Time, outside temperature and date
- 2 Distance recorder – odometer – and trip distance recorder
- 3 Press the knob:
 - ▷ Reset trip distance recorder with the ignition switched on
 - ▷ With the ignition switched off, displaying time, outside temperature display and distance recorder for a short time

The outside temperature and time of day are displayed following radio readiness.

To call up the date:


Press the CHECK button on the flashing turn indicator lever, see page 77.

Setting the time and date, see page 79.

You can alter the unit of measurement °C or °F on the control display, see Units of measurement on page 81.

Outside temperature warning

Once the display shows a temperature of below +3 °C/37 °F, a signal sounds and a warning lamp comes on. There is an increased risk of ice.

 Ice can still form even at temperatures above +3 °C/37 °F. You should therefore drive carefully over bridges and shaded roads; otherwise there is an increased risk of accident. ◀

Revolution counter



The white striped advance warning zone, arrow 1, changes depending on the engine temperature. As the engine temperature increases, the advance warning zone reduces in size accordingly. Avoid engine speeds in the advance warning zone if possible.

You must avoid engine speeds in the red warning zone, arrow 2. In this zone the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant and therefore the engine become too hot, a warning lamp will come on. In addition, a message will appear on the control display.

Checking coolant level, see page 188.

Energy control



Shows the momentary fuel consumption. This enables you to check how economical and environmentally friendly your current driving style is.

Fuel gauge




Fuel tank capacity: approx. 70 litres, approx. 15.4 gal. Notes on refuelling, see page 180.

If the car is at an angle for some time, for example on a long mountain road, the value in the display may fluctuate to some extent.

Reserve

Once the fuel level has fallen to the reserve zone, a message appears on the control display for a short time and the remaining operating range is displayed on the computer. If the remaining range is less than approx. 50 km, approx. 30 miles, the message is displayed permanently on the control display.

 If the range is below 50 km, approx. 30 miles, refuel the car, otherwise the engine's functions are not assured and damage may occur. ◀

Computer

Displays in the instrument cluster




To access the information, press the BC button on the flashing turn indicator lever following radio readiness.

The following items of information are displayed in the order listed:

- ▷ Range
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption

Range

This display indicates how far the car can probably be driven on the fuel remaining in the tank. The distance is calculated on the basis of the way the car has been driven over the past 30 km, approx. 20 miles.

 If the range is below 50 km, approx. 30 miles, refuel the car, otherwise the engine's functions are not assured and damage may occur. ◀

Average speed

The calculation of average speed ignores any stationary periods where the engine was switched off.

To reset the average speed: press the BC button on the flashing turn indicator lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the period since the engine was last started.

You can have the average fuel consumption for two different distances displayed on the control display, see Displays on the control display or Journey computer* further below.

To reset the average consumption: press the BC button on the flashing turn indicator lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Displays on the control display

You can also call up the computer via iDrive, principle see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Move the controller to the right to call up "Navigation".
On cars without navigation system*:
Call up "OBC".
3. Select "On-board Info" and press the controller.



4. Select "Computer" and press the controller.



- ▷ Estimated arrival time:
 - ▷ Enter a distance manually in the computer, see further below.
 - ▷ Enter a destination in the navigation system*, see page 134.
- ▷ Range
- ▷ Distance from destination:
 - ▷ Enter a distance manually in the computer, see further below.
 - ▷ Enter a destination in the navigation system*, see page 134.
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption

Resetting values

You can reset the values for average speed and average consumption:

1. Select the respective menu item and press the controller.
2. Press the controller again to confirm your selection.

Entering distance manually

1. Select "Distance to dest." and press the controller.



2. Turn the controller to set the distance to the destination. You may need to overcome a slight resistance if you wish to enter a relatively high difference.
3. Press the controller to adopt the setting.

The distance is automatically preset during route guidance by the navigation system*.

Journey computer*

The journey computer is suitable e.g. for a holiday trip.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Call up "Navigation".
On cars without navigation system*: call up "OBC".
3. Select "On-board Info" and press the controller.
4. Select "Journey computer" and press the controller.



- ▶ Departure time
- ▶ Journey time
- ▶ Distance covered
- ▶ Average speed
- ▶ Average fuel consumption

To start, stop or reset all values in the journey computer:

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item.
3. Press the controller.

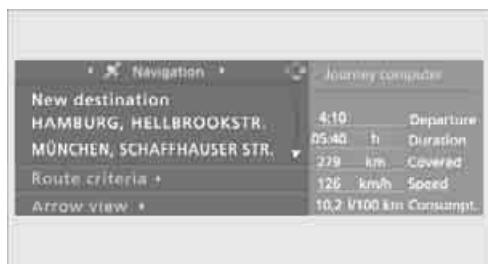
Display options

You can have the computer or the journey computer displayed in the assistance window.

1. Move the controller to the right to switch to the assistance window and press the controller.



2. Select "Computer" or "Journey computer".
3. Press the controller.



Service requirements



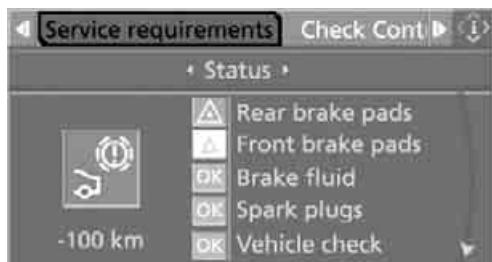
The distance remaining to the next service and its date are displayed briefly when the ignition is switched on.

- ▶ The extent of service work required can be read out from the remote control by your BMW Service Advisor. ◀

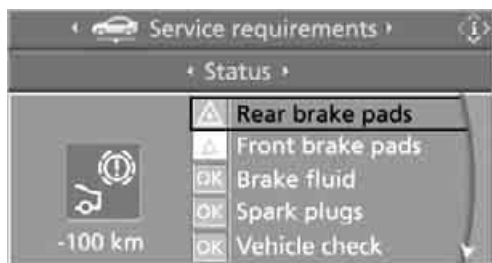
Further information

You can have further information on the scope of maintenance displayed on the control display, see page 14.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Service" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service requirements" and press the controller.

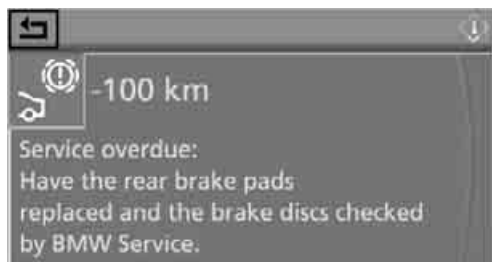


5. Select "Status" and press the controller.



A list of selected maintenance routines and inspections required by law is displayed.

You can call up more information on each entry: Select the entry and press the controller.



To exit the menu:
Select the **←** arrow and press the controller.

Symbols



No servicing is currently needed.



Servicing or an inspection required by law is due soon. Please arrange a Service appointment.

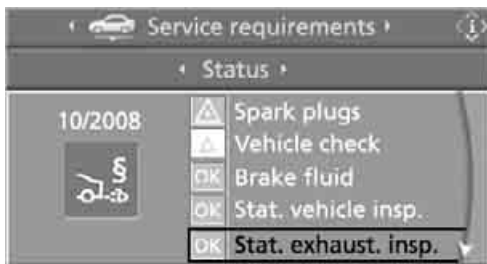


Servicing is overdue.

Entering dates of statutory emissions tests and vehicle inspections*

Make sure that the date on the control display is always set correctly, see page 80, otherwise the Condition Based Service CBS cannot function correctly.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Service" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service requirements" and press the controller.
5. Select "Status" and press the controller.
6. Select "Stat. exhaust. insp." or "Stat. vehicle insp." and press the controller.



7. Select "Schedule date for service" and press the controller. The month is selected.
8. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.



9. Press the controller to adopt the setting.
The year is selected.
10. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
11. Press the controller to adopt the setting.
The date input is memorised.

To exit the menu:

Select the  arrow and press the controller.

Check Control

Principle


The Check Control monitors car functions and alerts you to any faults in the systems monitored. The system alerts you by means of indicator or warning lamps in the instrument cluster, possibly accompanied by an acoustic signal, and text messages at the bottom of the control display.

Indicator and warning lamps



Indicator and warning lamps may light up in a variety of colours and combinations both in the panel 1 and in the display 2.



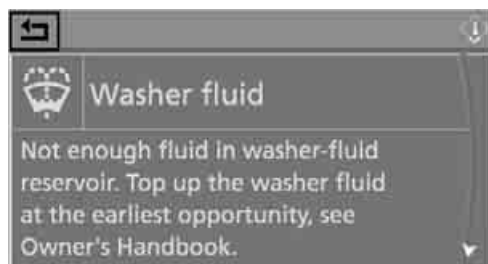
 means that a Check Control message has been issued. The symbol remains visible even if the Check Control message disappears again

after a short time. The warning lamp signals and text messages are memorised and can be called up again subsequently, see also page 77.

Explanatory text messages



Text messages appearing at the lower edge of the control display explain the meaning of the indicator and warning lamps that have come on.



You can subsequently call up additional information for most Check Control messages, e.g. the cause of a malfunction and what action is required on your part, see below.

If action is required as a matter of urgency, this information is flashed up as soon as the accompanying lamp comes on.

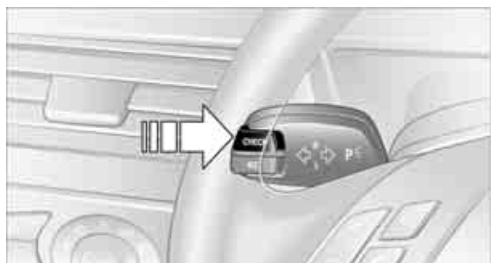
Exit the displayed information:

Select the  arrow and press the controller.

Order of importance of Check Control messages

Important Check Control messages remain until the faults in question have been rectified. These messages cannot be deleted. If several faults occur at the same time, they are displayed in succession.

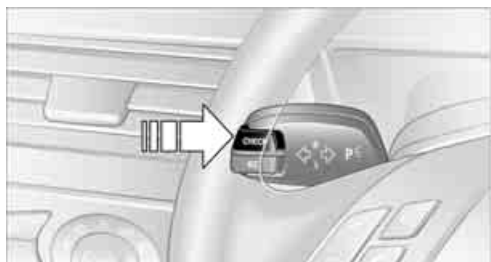
Less important messages disappear after approx. 20 seconds, but they remain memorised.



To hide these Check Control messages:
Press the CHECK button on the flashing turn indicator lever.

Displaying memorised Check Control messages

1. Press and hold down the button:
The first message stored is displayed.



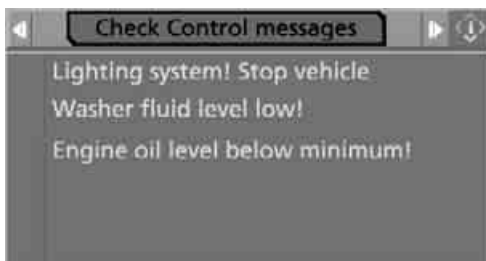
2. Press the button:
Every time you press the button, another message is displayed.

Displaying further information subsequently

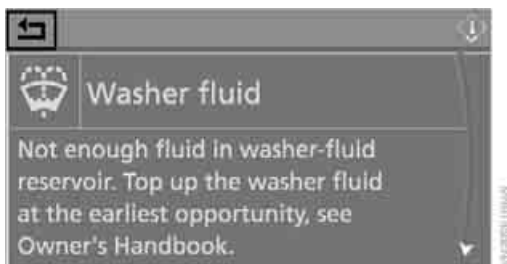
iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Service" and press the controller.

4. Select "Check Control messages" and press the controller.

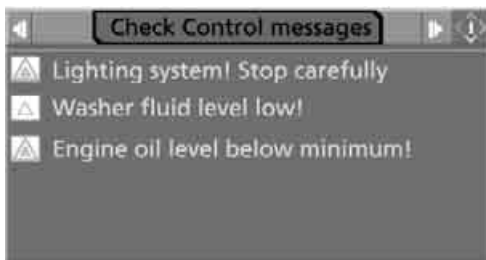


5. Select a text message and press the controller.



To exit the display:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Displaying the urgency of malfunctions



Depending on the equipment specification, the following symbols are displayed alongside the Check Control messages in the memory:

- There are no malfunctions in the systems monitored.
- There are malfunctions in the systems monitored. Supplementary information is given on the control display for certain malfunctions.
-

The symbols also show the service requirements status, see page 74.

Messages displayed at end of a journey

Malfunctions which have been indicated during a journey are displayed again when you switch off the ignition.

You can call up the messages again provided the display has not yet gone out. Press CHECK button for approx. 2 seconds. If there are several messages, press the CHECK button as many times as necessary.

The display goes out

- ▷ Automatically after a short time
- ▷ If you press the CHECK button again for approx. 2 seconds

Speed limit*

You can enter a speed at which you are to be alerted by means of a Check Control message. You can use this feature e.g. to ensure that you do not exceed the speed limit in a built-up area. A renewed reminder of this speed limit will not be given unless you have undercut it by at least 5 km/h, approx. 3 mph, in the meantime.

Displaying, setting or altering limit

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Call up "Navigation".
On cars without navigation system*: call up "OBC".
3. Select "On-board Info" and press the controller.
4. Select "Limit" and press the controller.



5. Select the speed and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to adjust the limit. You may need to overcome a slight resistance if you wish to enter a relatively high difference.
7. Press the controller to adopt the setting.
The limit is automatically switched on.

Memorising actual speed as limit value

Select "Accept current speed" and press the controller. The actual speed is memorised as the limit value.

Activating limit

Select "On" and press the controller.

☑ The limit is automatically switched on.

Stopwatch*

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Call up "Navigation".
On cars without navigation system*: call up "OBC".
3. Select "On-board Info" and press the controller.
4. Select "Stopwatch" and press the controller.




Starting, stopping or resetting

- ▷ Select "Start" and press the controller. The stopwatch starts at the time displayed.
- ▷ Select "Reset" and press the controller. The stopwatch is reset and starts again if it was running previously.

- ▶ Select "Stop" and press the controller. Timekeeping is stopped.

Taking an intermediate time reading

Select "Interm. time" and press the controller. The intermediate reading is displayed below the current time display.

 You can also call up other functions at any time while the stopwatch is running. The stopwatch continues to run in the background. ◀

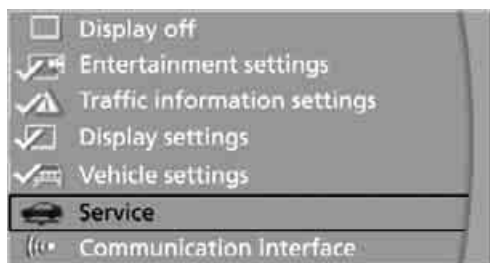
Settings on the control display

iDrive concept, see page 14.

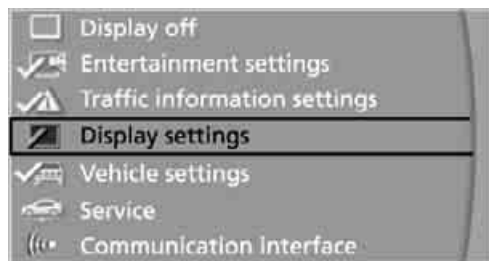
1. Press the **MENU** button once or twice until the start menu is displayed.



2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.

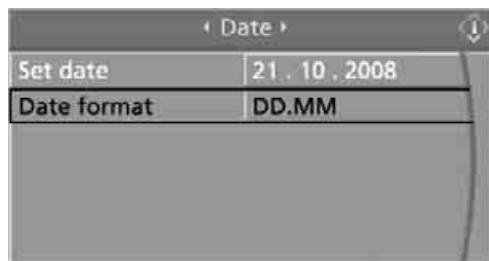


3. Turn the controller until "Display settings" is selected and press the controller.

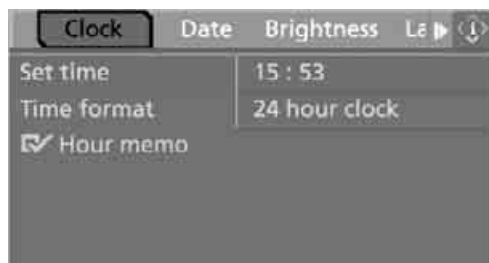


Setting time

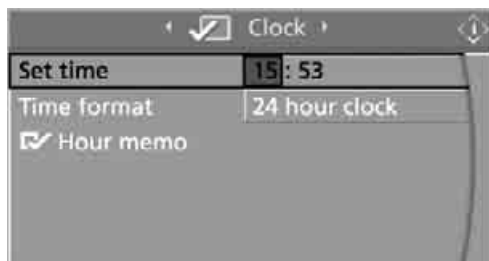
1. You may need to move the controller forward once to switch to the first field from the top.



2. Turn the controller until "Clock" is selected and press the controller.



3. Turn the controller until "Set time" is selected and press the controller.



Adjusting settings

1. Turn the controller to set the hour and press the controller.
2. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

The system accepts the new time.

Switching on hour signal*

Shortly before the hour, three signal tones will be emitted.

Select "Hour memo" and press the controller.

☒ The hour signal is switched on.

Setting the time format

1. Select "Time format" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

Setting date

1. Select "Date" and press the controller.



2. Select "Set date" and press the controller. The first part of the date setting is selected, in this example the day.
3. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
4. Press the controller to adopt the setting. The next part of the time setting is selected.
5. Complete the setting. Once the setting has been completed, the date is memorised.

Altering the date format

1. Select "Date format" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness of the control display

The brightness is automatically adjusted to ambient light conditions. However, you can adjust the basic setting.

1. Select "Brightness" and press the controller.



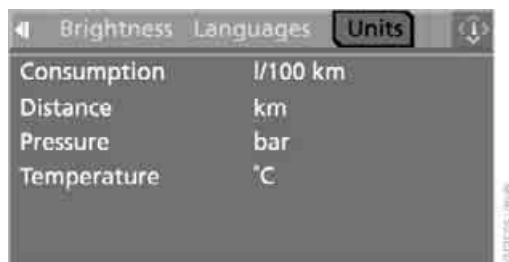
2. Move the controller to the right if necessary, to call up "Display Offset".
3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is obtained.

The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

Units of measurement

You can alter the units of measurement for fuel consumption, distance, temperature and pressure.

1. Select "Units" and press the controller.

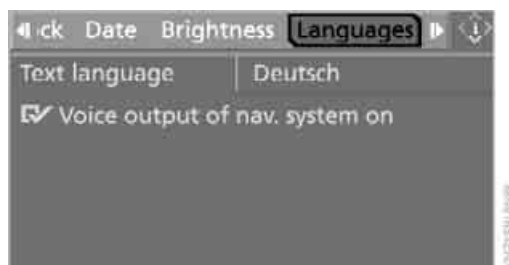


2. Select the desired menu item and press the controller.
3. Select the desired unit of measurement and press the controller.

The settings are saved for the remote control currently in use.

Language of the control display

1. Select "Languages" and press the controller.



2. Select "Text language" and press the controller. You can alter the language of the display texts.
3. Select the desired language and press the controller.


The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

Technical features for driving comfort and safety

Park Distance Control PDC*

Principle

PDC assists you when manoeuvring into a parking space. Audible signals and a visual display* indicate that you are approaching an object in front of or behind your car. Four ultrasonic sensors in each bumper measure the distance from it. The sensors cover a range of approx. 2 m or 7 ft. An acoustic warning does not sound, however, until an object is approx. 60 cm or 2 ft or closer to the front sensors or rear corner sensors, and approx. 1.5 m or 5 ft or closer to the rear centre sensors.

 PDC is a parking aid which is capable of registering objects approached at low speed, as is usually the case when the car is being parked. Avoid approaching an object rapidly, otherwise the system may be unable to alert you in sufficient time in view of the physical principles involved. ◀

If the car is towing a trailer, the rear sensors will be unable to supply meaningful signals. They therefore do not come on.

Automatic activation

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the system is activated automatically after approx. 1 second when you engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position R. Wait briefly before starting to drive, to allow the system to become active.

Switching on manually



Press the button, the LED comes on.

Switching off manually

Press the button again; the LED goes out.

Once you have driven approx. 50 m, approx. 165 ft, or travelled at a speed of more than approx. 30 km/h, approx. 20 mph, the system is deactivated and the LED goes out. Switch the system on again manually as necessary.

Audible warning signals

The fact that you are approaching an object is indicated by an intermittent warning signal for the part of the car in question. For instance, if an object is identified to the rear left of the car, the warning signal sounds at the rear left loud-speaker. The closer the car approaches the obstruction, the more rapid the sequence of signals. When the distance from a detected object is less than approx. 30 cm, approx. 1 ft, the signal becomes continuous.

An intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- ▷ If you remain in front of an object that was detected by only one of the corner sensors
- ▷ If you are driving parallel to a wall

Malfunction

The LED in the button flashes and a message appears on the control display. PDC has failed. Have the system checked.

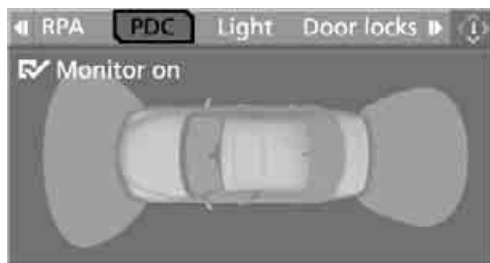
As a precautionary measure, keep the sensors clean and free from ice, so that they always operate reliably. Do not spray for any length of time with high-pressure cleaning equipment, and keep cleaning jets at least 10 cm, approx. 4 in, away from the sensors.

PDC with optical warning*

You can have the fact that you are approaching an object indicated on the control display. Objects that are further away from the car will appear on the control display before an audible warning signal is given.

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "PDC" and press the controller.



5. Select "Monitor on" and press the controller.

☒ The PDC image is switched on.

The display is shown on the control display as soon as PDC is activated.

The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

System limits



PDC is no substitute for your personal assessment of obstructions. The sensors have certain dead areas in which objects cannot always be detected. In addition, the identification of objects may not be possible if the physical limits of the ultrasonic measuring principle are exceeded, for instance with trailer noses and hitches, and thin or wedge-shaped objects. Low objects already indicated, such as a kerb, may enter the sensors' dead areas before a continuous audible signal is given. Higher, protruding objects, such as ledges, may not be detectable. Loud sound sources outside or inside the car can drown out the PDC signal. ◀

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW has a number of systems that help to maintain the car's stability even in adverse driving conditions.

Anti-lock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents the wheels locking when the brakes are applied. The car can consequently still be steered even when the brakes are applied hard. This increases active driving safety.

ABS is ready to operate each time the engine is started. Safe braking see page 124.

Cornering Brake Control CBC

When the brakes are applied while cornering when changing lanes, the car's stability and steering characteristics are further enhanced.

Electronic Brake Force Distribution

The system regulates the braking pressure on the rear wheels in order to stabilise the braking behaviour.

Dynamic Brake Control DBC

If the brake is pressed down rapidly, this system automatically boosts the braking force to a maximum and thus helps to keep the braking distance as short as possible when a full brake application is made. It also makes full use of the advantages offered by ABS.


Maintain pressure on the brake during the entire brake application. If the brake is released, DBC will be switched off.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

DSC prevents the driving wheels losing traction when you pull away from rest or accelerate.

DSC also recognises unstable driving conditions, for example if the rear of the car is about to swerve or if momentum is acting at an angle past the front wheels. In such instances, DSC helps to keep the car on a stable course, subject to the limits imposed by the basic laws of dynamics, by reducing the engine output and applying the brakes to individual wheels.

DSC is ready to operate each time the engine is started.

 Not even DSC can overcome the laws of physics. It is therefore the driver's responsibility to adopt a suitable driving style in every situation. Do not undermine the additional safety afforded by this system by taking driving risks. ◀

Deactivating DSC



Hold the button pressed until the DSC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster remains on permanently, but for no longer than approx. 10 seconds. Both Dynamic Traction Control DTC and DSC are deactivated. No stabilising or traction-

enhancing intervention will now take place. Intervention by the active steering*, which promotes stability, is likewise deactivated, see page 88.

A message appears on the control display: Please also observe the supplementary information given there.

In the interests of dynamic stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC

Press the button; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

Indicator lamps



If the indicator lamp is flashing: DSC is regulating the propulsive and braking forces.

If the indicator lamp is on: DSC is deactivated.

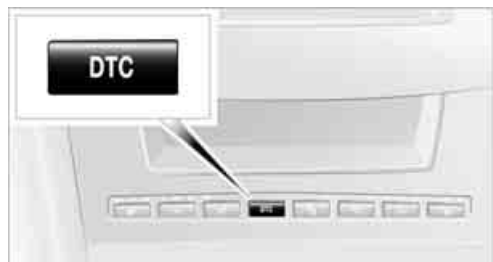
Dynamic Traction Control DTC

DTC is a version of DSC that has been traction-optimised for particular operating conditions, e.g. driving on roads where the snow has not been cleared. The system assures maximum traction, but with reduced dynamic stability. You should therefore drive with caution.

In the following exceptional situations it may be best to activate DTC for a short time:

- ▷ When driving uphill on snow-covered roads, in slush or on unploughed, snow-covered roads
- ▷ For rocking the car out of a hollow or starting in deep snow or on a loose surface
- ▷ When driving with snow chains*

Activating DTC



Press the button; the DTC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again; the DTC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

Indicator lamps



If the indicator lamp is flashing:
DTC is regulating the propulsive and braking forces.



If the indicator lamp is on:
DTC is activated.

xDrive 525xi, 530xi, 530xd

xDrive is the four-wheel-drive system of your BMW. The combined effect of xDrive and DSC further optimises traction and driving dynamics. The four-wheel-drive system xDrive distributes the torque flow variably to the front and rear wheels in accordance with the driving situation and the condition of the road surface.

Hill Descent Control HDC 525xi, 530xi, 530xd

Principle

HDC reduces the car's speed when driving down steep inclines and thus makes your BMW even easier to control in such conditions. The car will then move at about twice walking pace, without your having to regulate its speed.

HDC can be activated at speeds of less than approx. 35 km/h, approx. 22 mph. When the car starts to travel downhill, its speed of below

approx. 35 km/h, approx. 22 mph, is automatically reduced to about twice walking pace, approx. 12 km/h, approx. 7 mph, and this speed is then maintained.

You can alter this speed within the range of about 5 km/h and 25 km/h, approx. 3 mph and 16 mph, by accelerating or braking. You can specify a target speed within the same range by using the cruise control lever.

Activating HDC

You can activate HDC:

▷ With the programmable buttons on the steering wheel, see page 51

▷ Via iDrive

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "HDC" and press the controller.



5. Select "HDC on" and press the controller.

The HDC display in the instrument cluster appears.

If the car is braked automatically, a message appears on the control display for about 20 seconds.

Deactivating HDC

With the programmable buttons in the steering wheel or via iDrive; the HDC display goes out.

At above approx. 60 km/h, approx. 37 mph, HDC is deactivated immediately, and about 10 seconds after the ignition has been switched off.

Using HDC

Manual transmission:

Use HDC in low gears and when reversing.

Automatic transmission:

HDC can be used in any transmission speed.

Displays in the instrument cluster



- 1 Display of target speed
- 2 HDC display

Malfunction

If the HDC display goes out while HDC is in operation or does not come on:
HDC is temporarily unavailable due to the high temperature of the brakes.

Dynamic Drive*

Principle

Dynamic Drive minimises side tilt of your car and optimises dynamic stability when cornering or taking evasive action.

Dynamic Drive is based on active stabilisers on the front and rear axles. Depending on the driving situation, the suspension response is sporty when cornering and relaxed when driving straight ahead. The system constantly acts within a fraction of a second while the car is on the move.

The system is ready to operate each time the engine is started.

Malfunction



The warning lamp lights up and a message appears on the control display: the system is faulty. Have the system checked as soon as possible.



If there is a malfunction, reduce your speed accordingly, particularly on bends. The car will lean over further when cornering and under the influence of cross-winds, and the suspension response will be noticeably softer when cornering.

If a message instructing you to stop the car appears on the control display, pull over as soon as possible and switch off the engine. In this instance, the oil level in the reservoir may have fallen below the minimum level, possibly due to a leak in the hydraulic system.

Do not drive the car any further; contact BMW Service instead. ◀

Touring: self-levelling suspension

Malfunction



If the warning lamp for self-levelling suspension lights up yellow and a message appears on the control display: the self-levelling suspension is faulty. Stop the car and check it. If the body is distinctly lower at the back than at the front, and possibly standing at an angle, for instance lower at the left than at the right, take the car to the nearest BMW Service or to a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel. Drive cautiously while the car is in this condition. The car's ground clearance is reduced and its ride comfort below the usual standard. Even if the car's suspension level is normal, take it to the nearest BMW Service or to a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel if a fault is indicated.

Run Flat Indicator RPA


Principle

The Run Flat Indicator monitors the pressures in the four tyres fitted to the wheels while the car is being driven. The system reports any significant loss of pressure in one tyre in relation to another.


If a tyre loses pressure its rolling radius changes, and this in turn alters the speed of rotation. This change is detected and reported as tyre failure.

Operating requirements

To ensure that tyre failure can be reported reliably, the system must have been initialised while the tyre pressures are correct.

 The system has to be reinitialised every time tyre pressures are corrected, after each change of a wheel or tyre, and after a trailer has been attached or detached. ◀

System limits


 The Run Flat Indicator is unable to warn the driver of sudden, severe tyre damage caused by external factors, nor can it identify the gradual loss of pressure that will inevitably occur in all four tyres over a lengthy period of time. ◀

In the following situations, the system could be slow to respond or operate incorrectly:

- ▷ If the system has not been initialised
- ▷ When driving on snow-covered or slippery surfaces
- ▷ When driving with an enthusiastic style, causing the driven wheels to spin, high lateral acceleration
- ▷ When driving with snow chains*

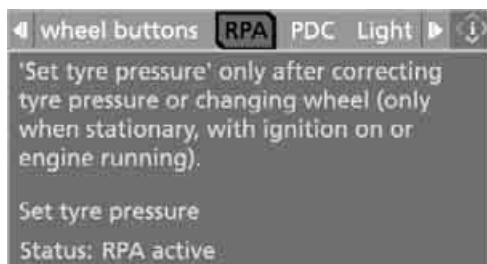
The Run Flat Indicator is unable to function if the compact wheel* is fitted.

Initialising the system

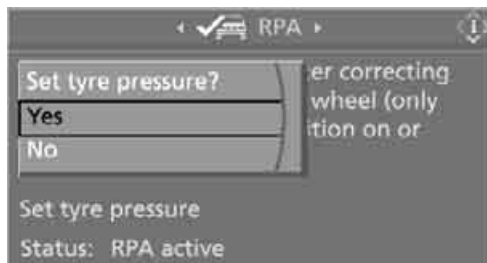
 Initialising is completed by driving the car; this process can be interrupted at any time. Initialising resumes automatically when you continue your journey. Do not initialise the system while driving with snow chains* or a compact wheel* fitted to the car. ◀

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "RPA" and press the controller.



5. Start the engine but do not drive off yet.
6. Select "Set tyre pressure" and press the controller.
7. Select "Yes" and press the controller.




8. Drive off.
The message "Initialising..." is displayed.

Initialising is completed during the journey. The control display then shows "Status: RPA active" again.

Indication of a flat tyre



The warning lamp shows red. A message appears on the control display. An acoustic signal also sounds. There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre pressure.


1. Reduce your speed and stop the car carefully. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Identify the damaged wheel.
 If you are unable to identify where the problem lies, contact BMW Service. ◀
3. Change the wheel with the damaged tyre, see Changing a wheel, page 196.

Run-flat tyres*

1. Carefully reduce your speed to no more than 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph, after this.



If the car is not fitted with run-flat tyres, see page 183, do not continue your journey, as driving on a flat tyre could result in a serious accident. ◀

2. Check the pressure in all four tyres at the next opportunity.
 If all four tyres are inflated to the correct pressures, the Run Flat Indicator might not have been initialised. Initialise the system. ◀
3. If a tyre is completely deflated, you can estimate how far you will be able to drive using the following guidelines:
 - ▷ With low loads:
1 to 2 persons, without luggage:
approx. 250 km, approx. 155 miles
 - ▷ With moderate loads:
2 persons, luggage compartment or load area full, or 4 persons without luggage:
approx. 150 km, approx. 90 miles
 - ▷ With full load:
4 persons or more, luggage compartment or load area full:
approx. 50 km, approx. 30 miles



Drive with caution and do not exceed 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph. If there is a loss of tyre pressure, the car's handling properties will change. These include reduced track stability during braking, longer braking distances and altered self-steering properties.

If unusual vibration or loud noises occur during the journey, this may be an indication that the damaged tyre has finally failed. Reduce your speed and pull over to a suitable location as soon as possible. Otherwise, parts of the tyre could come loose, which could result in an accident. Do not drive the car any further; contact BMW Service instead. ◀

Active steering*

Principle

Active steering is a system which actively varies the steering lock of the front wheels in relation to steering wheel movements.

At low speeds, e.g. in built-up areas or when parking, the steering lock is accentuated, i.e. the steering response becomes very direct. At higher speeds, on the other hand, the steering lock is gradually reduced. This improves the handling of your BMW across the entire speed range.

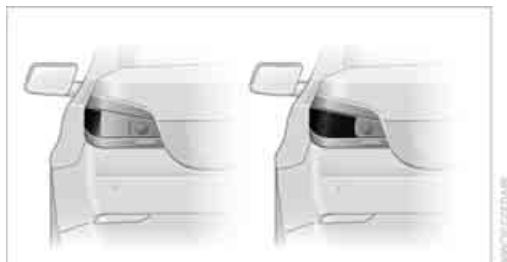
In critical situations, the system can specifically correct the angle through which the driver has turned the wheels, and thus to stabilise the car before the driver starts to take corrective action. This stability-enhancing action is deactivated when DSC is shut down, see page 84.

Malfunction



The warning lamp lights up and a message appears on the control display: the active steering is faulty and deactivated. At low speeds, more pronounced movement of the steering wheel is required, whereas the car will respond more sensitively to steering wheel movements at higher speeds. The stabilising intervention may also be deactivated. Drive cautiously and think well ahead. Have the system checked.

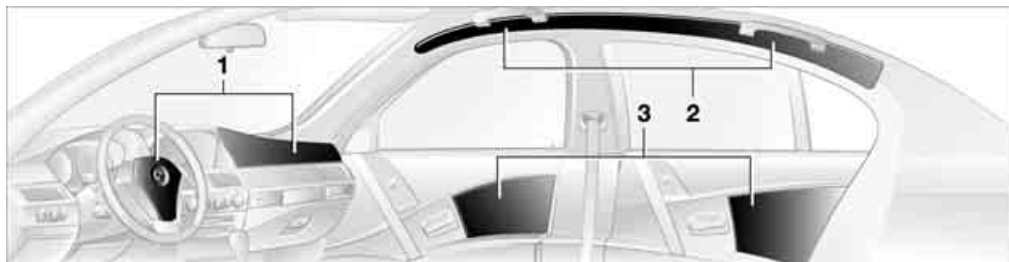
Two-stage brake lights*



Picture on the left: normal braking.

Picture on the right: strong braking when rear fog lights* are not switched on.


Airbags



There are the following airbags beneath the covers indicated:


- 1 Front airbags
- 2 Head-level airbag
- 3 Side airbags at front and rear*

Protective effect

 Comply with the notes on page 42, or there may be a risk to your personal safety. ◀

The front airbags protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a head-on collision, if the protective action of the seat belts alone would be insufficient. The head-level and side airbags provide protection in the event of a side-on collision. The side airbag has the effect of supporting the upper body from the side. The head-level airbag supports the head of the seat's occupant.

The airbags will purposely not be activated by every collision, e.g. in more minor accidents, certain roll-over situations and rear-end collisions.

 Never attach any material to the airbag covers with adhesive, place material over them or modify them in any way. Do not dismantle the airbag occupant restraint system. Do not modify the individual components of the system or its wiring in any way. This includes the upholstered covers on the steering wheel, instrument panel, doors and roof posts as well as the sides of the roof lining. Do not remove the steering wheel. Avoid touching the system's components immediately after it has been triggered off, as there is a risk of sustaining burns. If

the airbag occupant restraint system develops a fault, is shut down out of use or has been activated, have it checked, repaired or dismantled and the airbag generators scrapped only by BMW Service or by a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel and the necessary permits for handling explosive devices. Any careless or unskilled interference with the system could lead to its failure or to accidental triggering off with the risk of injury. ◀


Operational status of airbag system



Following radio readiness, see page 56, the warning lamp comes on for a short time to indicate that the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners are operational.

Airbag system faulty

- ▷ Warning lamp does not come on following radio readiness.
- ▷ Warning lamp remains permanently on.

 In the event of a fault in the airbag system, have it checked without delay, as there is otherwise the risk that the system will not function as intended even if a sufficiently severe accident occurs. ◀

Head-Up Display*

Principle

The Head-Up Display projects important information into the driver's field of view, e.g. navigation instructions. This enables you to register this information without having to divert your eyes from the road.



Switching on/off

With the engine running or ignition switched on:
To switch on or off, press the button.



- 1 Navigation instructions
- 2 Display
 - ▷ Cruise control
 - ▷ Active Cruise Control
- 3 Speed

Selecting displays

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Head-Up Display settings" and press the controller.
5. Select the desired information for the Head-Up Display.



6. Press the controller.
☒ The information is shown on the Head-Up Display.

The settings are saved for the remote control currently in use.

Adjusting brightness

The brightness of the display is automatically adjusted according to ambient light conditions. However, you can adjust the basic setting. When the low-beam headlights are switched on, the brightness can also be adjusted using the knurled wheel for the instrument lighting.

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "Brightness" and press the controller.



5. Move the controller to the left if necessary, to call up "Head-Up Display Offset".
6. Turn the controller until the desired setting is obtained.

The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

The visibility of information in the Head-Up Display is influenced by:

- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarisation filters
- ▷ Certain seated positions
- ▷ Objects resting on the Head-Up Display's cover
- ▷ Wet roads and poor light conditions

If the image is shown distorted, have the basic settings checked.

Special windscreen

The windscreen constitutes part of the system. The windscreen is shaped in a way that satisfies the requirements of the Head-Up Display and permits the projection of precise images. A film in the windscreen prevents double images occurring.

Always have a windscreen replaced only either by BMW Service or by a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel.

Care notes

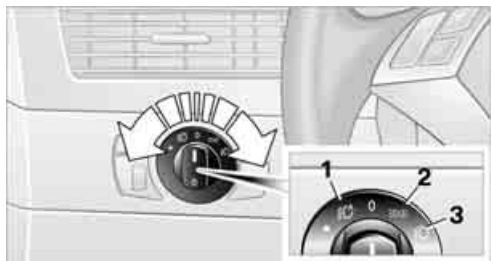
For useful information on this subject, see the booklet Looking after your car.



- ⚠ To avoid damage when cleaning the Head-Up Display's cover, use only a soft, non-scratching cloth or a cleaning cloth for display screens. ◀

Lights

Side lights/Low-beam headlights



- 1 Automatic driving lights control*, Adaptive Head Light* and High-beam headlights assistant*
- 2 Side lights
- 3 Low-beam headlights and daytime driving lights

Side lights

When the switch is in position **2** the lights are on all round the car. You can use the side lights for parking. There is the additional option of switching on the lights on the side nearest the road when parked, see page 95.



The side lights will discharge the battery. Do not leave them switched on for too long, otherwise the engine may fail to start. ◀

Low-beam headlights

The low-beam headlights come on in switch position **3** if the ignition is switched on; otherwise the side lights come on.

Headlight courtesy delay feature

If you activate the headlight flasher after parking the car, with the lights switched off, the low-beam headlights come on and remain on for a certain time. You can adjust the operating period or deactivate the function using iDrive.

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Light" and press the controller.



5. Select "Home lights" and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the appropriate duration.
7. Press the controller to adopt the setting.

Daytime driving lights

If desired, the light switch can remain in position **3**.

If necessary, switch on the side lights as described under Side lights.

You can activate or deactivate the daytime driving lights:

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Light" and press the controller.



5. Select "Daytime running light" and press the controller.

Daytime driving lights are switched on.

Automatic driving lights control*

When the switch is in position **1**, the low-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically depending on ambient light conditions, e.g. in a tunnel, twilight, and in precipitation. Adaptive Head Light* is active. When the low-beam headlights are on, the LED next to the symbol is lit.

When driving into brightly illuminated tunnels, there may be a delay before the headlights switch on.

The headlights may also switch on when the sun is sitting low on a blue sky.

The low-beam headlights remain switched on irrespective of the ambient light conditions if you switch on the fog lights*. For daytime driving lights, the low-beam headlights always come on with the switch in this position when the ignition is switched on. ◀

The driving lights control function is no substitute for your individual judgement of when it is necessary to switch on the lights. The sensors are unable, for instance, to recognise fog or hazy weather. In such situations, switch on the lights manually to avoid any safety risk. ◀

Adaptive Head Light*

Principle

Adaptive Head Light is a variable headlight control system that makes it possible to illuminate the road surface more effectively. The light cones from the headlights are directed to suit the road ahead on the basis of steering angle and other parameters.

Activating Adaptive Head Light

In switch position **1**, Adaptive Head Light is active and automatic driving lights control is switched on.

To avoid dazzling the drivers of oncoming vehicles, Adaptive Head Light is not active when the car is reversing and directs the light to the front passenger's side when the car is at a standstill.

Malfunction

The LED next to the symbol for automatic driving lights control flashes. Adaptive Head Light is faulty or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Headlight beam throw adjustment

Halogen lights



The beam throw of the low-beam headlights must be adjusted manually to suit the load carried in the car, otherwise the drivers of oncoming vehicles could be dazzled.

Saloon

The second value in each case applies when towing a trailer.

0 / 1 = 1 to 2 persons without luggage

1 / 1 = 5 persons without luggage

1 / 2 = 5 persons with luggage

2 / 2 = 1 person, luggage compartment full

Comply with rear axle load limit, see page 214 onwards.

Touring

All load conditions: **0**.

Exception: 1 person, load area full and with a trailer being towed: **1**.

Comply with rear axle load limit, see page 215 onwards.

Xenon headlights*

The headlight beam throw is regulated automatically, e.g. when accelerating and braking and to adapt to the different loads being carried.

High-beam headlights/ parking lights



- 1 High-beam headlights
- 2 Headlight flasher
- 3 Parking lights

Right or left parking lights*

There is an additional option of switching on the lights on the side of the car facing the road when parked, if permitted in the country of use:

Once you have switched the engine off, push the lever beyond the pressure point in the corresponding direction **3**.



The parking lights will drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for too long, otherwise the engine may fail to start. ◀

High-beam headlights assistant*

Principle

This system switches the high-beam headlights on and off automatically. The process is controlled by a sensor on the front of the inside mirror. The assistant ensures that the high-beam headlights are switched on whenever permitted by the situation in which the car is being driven. This relieves the load on you the driver and optimises your view of the road. You can of course intervene at any time and switch the high-beam headlights on and off in the usual way.

Activating the high-beam headlights assistant

1. Turn the illumination switch to switch position **1**, see page 93.
2. With the low-beam headlights switched on, briefly press the flashing turn indicator lever towards high-beam headlights.





The indicator lamp on the instrument cluster comes on when the high-beam headlights assistant is active. The lights are turned up and down automatically as the system responds to traffic travelling in front and in the oncoming direction, and also when ambient lighting is sufficient, e.g. in built-up areas.

Turning up and down manually

You can intervene at any time as required or if required by the situation:

- ▷ If the high-beam headlights assistant has switched on the high-beam headlights but you would prefer the low-beam headlights to be switched on, simply use the flashing turn indicator lever to turn the lights up and down accordingly. This will deactivate the high-beam headlights assistant. To reactivate the system, press the flashing turn indicator again briefly towards high-beam headlights.
- ▷ If the high-beam headlights assistant has switched on the low-beam headlights but you would prefer the high-beam headlights to be switched, turn the lights up in the usual way. This deactivates the system and you will have to turn the lights down by hand. To reactivate the system, press the flashing turn indicator again briefly towards high-beam headlights.
- ▷ You can use the headlamp flasher in the usual way when the headlights are dimmed.

System limits



You should always give priority to your own judgement over that of the high-beam headlights assistant in respect of the use of high-beam headlights. In such situations you should turn the headlights down manually in order not to create a safety hazard. ◀

In the following example situations, the system will not operate or its operation will be subject to restrictions and your intervention may be required:

- ▷ In extremely unfavourable weather conditions such as dense fog or heavy rain
- ▷ In order to be able to perceive poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horses and riders, carts, in situations where trains or ships are travelling in the vicinity of the road, deer passing
- ▷ On narrow bends, steep uphill or downhill gradients, at traffic junctions or if your view of oncoming traffic on a motorway is obstructed
- ▷ In poorly lit towns and where there are very reflective signs
- ▷ At low road speeds
- ▷ If the windscreen in the area in front of the inside mirror has fogged over, is dirty or is covered with stickers, labels, etc.
- ▷ If the sensor is dirty. Use a cloth soaked in glass cleaner to clean the sensor on the front of the inside mirror

Fog lights



To switch on/off, press the respective button.

- 1 Front fog lights*
- 2 Rear fog lights*

Front fog lights*



The side lights or low-beam headlights must be switched on. The green indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on when the front fog lights are in use.



If automatic driving lights control has been activated, the low-beam headlights come on automatically when the front fog lights are switched on. ◀

Rear fog lights*



The low-beam headlights or front fog lights must be switched on. The yellow indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on when the rear fog lights are in use.

Instrument lighting



You can adjust the lighting intensity with the knurled wheel.

Interior light

The interior light, the footwell lights, the door entry lighting, the load area lights* and the ground lights* are controlled automatically.

Switching interior light on/off manually



Press the button.

To switch off the light permanently, hold the button pressed for about 3 seconds.



If you switch on the independent ventilation system* or auxiliary heater* with the remote control, the interior light comes on for a short time by way of confirmation. ◀

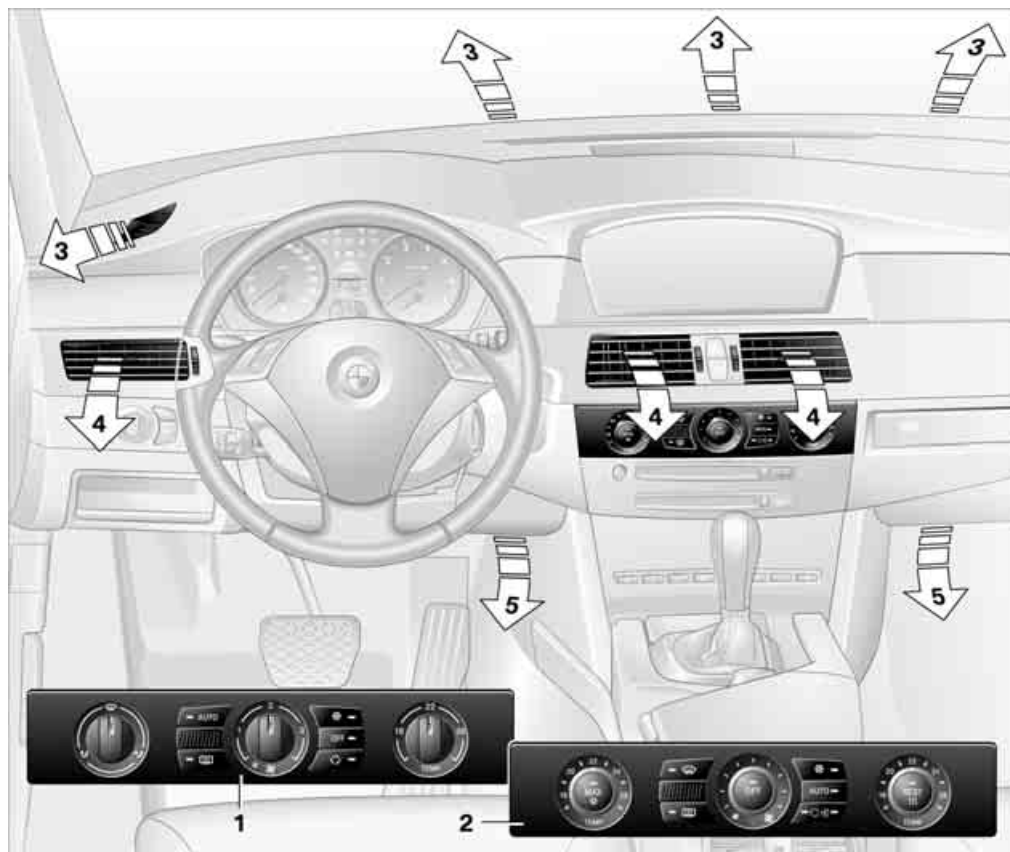
Reading lights



There are reading lights at the front and rear, next to the interior lights. To switch on/off, press the button.



To save the battery, all the lights in the car will be switched off approx. 15 minutes after radio readiness has been switched off, see Start/stop button on page 56. ◀



Equipment versions

There are two versions of automatic air conditioning, depending on the equipment fitted to your car.

- 1 Automatic air conditioning
- 2 Automatic air conditioning with extended range of features*

Air vents

- 3 Air to windscreen and side windows
- 4 Air to the upper body area, see Ventilation at front on page [100](#) and [105](#)
- 5 Air to footwells

Automatic air conditioning



- 1 Air distribution, adjusting manually
- 2 AUTO program
- 3 Air volume, adjusting manually
- 4 Switching cooling function on/off manually
- 5 Temperature control
- 6 Switching off automatic air conditioning
- 7 Recirculated-air mode
- 8 LED for auxiliary heater*
- 9 Rear window heating
- 10 Air inlet grille for interior temperature sensor, keep unobstructed

Preferred interior climate

The AUTO program 2 can optimise air distribution and air volume in virtually any situation, see AUTO program below. All you need to do is select an inside temperature 5 which is comfortable for you.

The following sections inform you in detail about how to adjust the settings.

AUTO program



The AUTO program takes charge of setting the air volume and air distribution to the windscreen and side windows, to the upper body and to the footwell.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO program.

Temperature



The scale values are guide figures for the interior temperature.




The automatic air-conditioning system attains this temperature as quickly as possible regardless of the season by using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.



The automatic air-conditioning system does not have sufficient time to establish the set temperature when temperature settings are changed quickly in succession. ◀

Adjusting air distribution manually



You can direct the air volume to the windows , towards the upper body  and into the footwell . Any intermediate setting is possible. You can switch the automatic function for air distribution back on with the AUTO button.

The air volume continues to be regulated automatically when the air distribution is adjusted manually.

Adjusting air volume manually



Turn to vary the air volume. You can switch the automatic function for the air volume back on by pressing the AUTO button.

The higher the air volume, the more effective the air conditioning will be.

Switching cooling function on and off



Air is cooled and dried when the cooling function is switched on, then reheated to suit the temperature setting. Depending on weather conditions, the windscreen may fog over momentarily when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO program. The interior can only be cooled when the engine is running.

Recirculated-air mode



If the air outside the car has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the supply to the interior of the car can be shut off temporarily. The air inside the car is then recirculated.



If the windows fog over in the recirculated-air mode, switch it off and, if necessary, increase the air volume.

The recirculated-air mode should not be used continuously for lengthy periods, as the quality of the air inside the car will otherwise gradually deteriorate. ◀

Switching off automatic air conditioning



The air volume, the heating and the cooling function are switched off. The automatic air conditioning can be switched on again by pressing any button.

Rear window heating



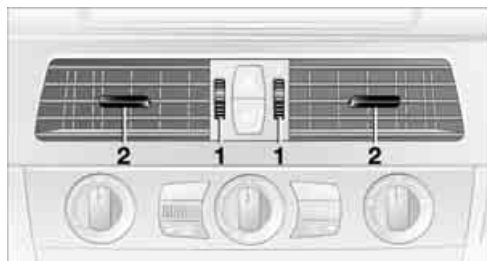
The rear window heater switches off automatically after a certain time.

Defrosting windows and removing mist



1. Turn the rotary control for the air distribution to position .
2. Turn the rotary control for the air volume completely to the right.
3. Using the temperature rotary control, select an interior temperature that you find pleasant, e.g. 22 °C/72 °F.
4. Close off the ventilation for the rear-seat area.
5. To defrost the rear window, switch on the heated rear window.

Ventilation at front



- 1 Knurled wheels for continuous opening and closing of the vents
- 2 Levers for adjusting the direction of the airflow



Do not drop any foreign objects into the outlets, otherwise they could be blown out with some force and cause injury. ◀

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the outlets so that cool air is directed towards you, e.g. if the car's interior has become hot.

Draught-free ventilation

Turn outlets so that the airflow passes the occupants without striking their bodies directly.

Adjusting temperature for the upper body area

With the ignition switched on, you can adjust the settings of the automatic air conditioning system via iDrive.

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Move the controller to the left to call up "Climate".
3. Select "Centre vent " and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller. The setting is adopted; you can now change to another field.



Rear-seat area ventilation



- 1 Knurled wheel for continuous opening and closing of the outlets
- 2 Levers for adjusting the direction of the airflow

Micro-filter

The micro-filter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air. This filter is changed by BMW Service during routine maintenance work. You can call up further information on the control display, see page 74.

Automatic air conditioning with extended range of features*



- 1 Temperature, left-hand side of interior compartment
- 2 Maximum cooling effect
- 3 Defrosting and demisting windows
- 4 Air volume, adjusting manually
- 5 Switching off automatic air conditioning
- 6 Switching cooling function on/off manually
- 7 Temperature, right-hand side of interior compartment
- 8 Residual heat utilisation
- 9 AUTO program
- 10 Automatic Air Recirculation Control AUC/ recirculated-air mode
- 11 LED for independent ventilation system*
- 12 Rear window heating
- 13 Air inlet grille for interior temperature sensor, keep unobstructed

The current setting for the air distribution is displayed on the control display.


Preferred interior climate

The AUTO program can optimise air distribution and air volume in virtually any situation, see AUTO program below. All you need to do is select an inside temperature which is comfortable for you.

The following sections inform you in detail about how to adjust the settings.

Most settings are saved for the remote control currently in use, see also Personal Profile settings on page 27.

AUTO program

 The AUTO program takes charge of setting the air distribution and air volume to the windscreen and side windows, to the upper body and to the footwell. It in addition adapts your temperature requirements in the light of ambient seasonal influences.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO program. A condensation sensor simultaneously regulates the program in such a way as to avoid or minimise condensation on the window surfaces.

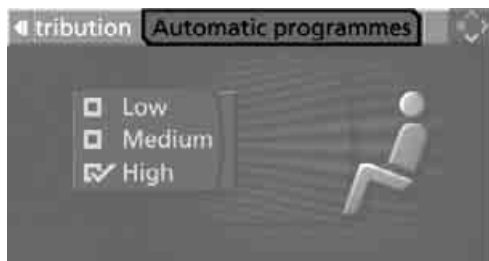
Intensity of the AUTO program


You can reduce or boost the intensity of the automatic air conditioning in line with your individual requirements.

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Move the controller to the left to call up "Climate".

3. Select "Automatic programmes " and press the controller.




4. Select the desired intensity and press the controller.
 The selected intensity level of the automatic program is switched on.

Temperature



Set the desired temperatures individually for the driver's and front passenger's sides.

The automatic air-conditioning system attains this temperature as quickly as possible regardless of the season by using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

 The automatic air-conditioning system does not have sufficient time to establish the set temperature when temperature settings are changed quickly in succession. ◀

Adjusting temperature for the upper body area

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Call up "Climate".
3. Select "Air distribution " and press the controller.

4. Select the field by moving the controller and turn the controller to adjust the temperature.



Defrosting windows and removing mist



Remove ice and condensation quickly from the windscreen and from the front side windows.

Rear window heating



The rear window heater switches off automatically after a certain time.

Adjusting air volume manually



Turn to vary the air volume. You can switch the automatic function for the air volume back on by pressing the AUTO button.

Air distribution adjusting manually

You can preset the air distribution.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Call up "Climate".
3. Select "Air distribution " and press the controller.
 Settings for the driver's and front passenger's side can be made separately via the field on the right-hand or left-hand side.
4. Select driver's or front passenger's side as appropriate.
 Move the controller repeatedly to the right or left to select the driver's or front passenger's side.
5. Move the controller to select the required field.

6. Turn the controller to adapt the air distribution.



Driver's side:

- 1 Air to windscreen and side windows
- 2 Air to the upper body area
- 3 Air to footwells

Front passenger's side:

- 4 Air to the upper body area
- 5 Air to footwells



Pressing the AUTO button cancels the air distribution settings at the control display, and vice-versa. ◀

Switching cooling function on and off



Air is cooled and dried when the cooling function is switched on, then reheated to suit the temperature setting. Depending on weather conditions, the windscreen may fog over momentarily when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO program. The interior can only be cooled when the engine is running.

Maximum cooling effect



At outside temperatures above 0 °C/32 °F and when the engine is running, you obtain a maximum cooling effect as soon as possible.

The automatic air-conditioning system switches to the lowest temperature and operates in recirculated-air mode. Air flows at maximum rate only from the outlets for the upper body area. You should therefore open these outlets for maximum cooling.

Automatic Air Recirculation Control AUC/recirculated-air mode



If the air outside the car has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the supply to the interior of the car can be shut off. The air inside the car is then recirculated. In the AUC mode, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts it out automatically.

Three operating modes can be obtained in succession by pressing this button repeatedly:

- ▷ LED off: ambient air is constantly entering the car.
- ▷ Right-hand LED on, AUC mode: the system will identify pollutants in the ambient air and shut off the ambient air supply if necessary.
- ▷ Left-hand LED on, recirculated-air mode: the ambient air supply is permanently shut off.



If the windows fog over in the recirculated-air mode, switch it off and, if necessary, increase the air volume.

The recirculated-air mode should not be used continuously for lengthy periods, as the quality of the air inside the car will otherwise gradually deteriorate. ◀

Residual heat



Heat from the engine is stored and used to heat the car's interior, for instance when waiting at a level crossing.

The function can be switched on whenever the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Up to 15 minutes after the engine has been switched off
- ▷ The engine is at operating temperature
- ▷ Battery voltage is sufficient
- ▷ The outside temperature is below 25 °C/ 77 °F

The LED lights up when the function is switched on.

Following radio readiness, you can adjust the interior temperature, air flow rate and air distribution.

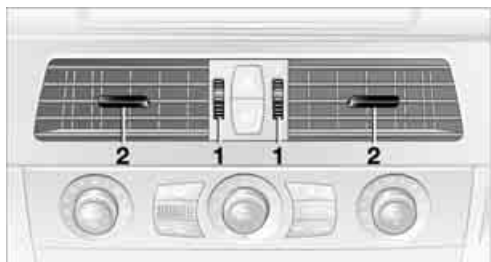
Switching off automatic air conditioning



The air volume, the heating and the cooling function are switched off.

The automatic air conditioning can be switched on again by pressing any button, except REST button.

Ventilation at front



- 1 Knurled wheels for continuous opening and closing of the vents
- 2 Levers for adjusting the direction of the air-flow



Do not drop any foreign objects into the outlets, otherwise they could be blown out with some force and cause injury. ◀

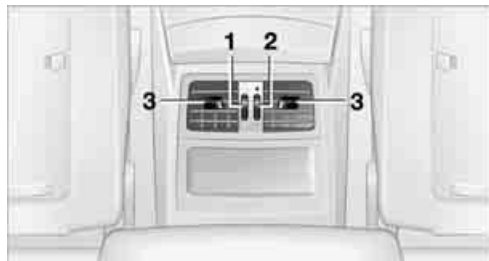
Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the outlets so that cool air is directed towards you, e.g. if the car's interior has become hot.

Draught-free ventilation

Turn outlets so that the airflow passes the occupants without striking their bodies directly.

Rear-seat area ventilation



- 1 Knurled wheel for continuous opening and closing of the outlets
- 2 Knurled wheel for adjusting the temperature:
 - ▷ Turned towards blue: cooler
 - ▷ Turned towards red: warmer
- 3 Levers for adjusting the direction of the air-flow

Micro-filter and activated charcoal filter

The micro-filter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air. The activated charcoal filter in addition removes gaseous pollutants from the air entering the car. This combined filter is changed by BMW Service during routine maintenance work.

You can call up further information on the control display, see page 74.

Independent ventilation system*/auxiliary heater*

Principle

The independent ventilation system ventilates the interior of the car and lowers its temperature as necessary.

The auxiliary heater heats the interior, and it facilitates removing snow and ice from the exterior.

Two different switch-on times can be preset. The systems can also be switched on/off using the remote control. They remain switched on for 30 minutes.

Since their current consumption is high, you should not run them twice in succession unless there has in the meantime been an opportunity to recharge the car's battery by driving the car. Both systems are controlled via iDrive or using the remote control, see page 107.


Independent ventilation system

The remote control and preselection of a switch-on time can switch on the independent ventilation system above outside temperatures of approx. 15 °C/59 °F. In direct mode it is operational at any outside temperature, but not in driving mode. If auxiliary heating is not fitted, the independent ventilation system is operational at any temperature with a preselected switch-on time.

Air emerges from the outlets for the upper body zone in the instrument panel. The outlets must therefore be open.

Auxiliary heater


The remote control and preselection of a switch-on time can switch on the auxiliary heater above outside temperatures of approx. 15 °C/59 °F. In direct mode it is operational at any outside temperature, but not in driving mode.


 If you have not used the auxiliary heater for several months, you may need to switch the system on again after a few minutes in order for the auxiliary heater to start up. ◀


With the ignition switched off, the heated air is automatically directed to the windscreen, side windows and footwell.

Following radio readiness, you can adjust the interior temperature, air flow rate and air distribution.

The auxiliary heater continues to run for a short time after it has been switched off.

 The symbol on the automatic air conditioning display goes out.

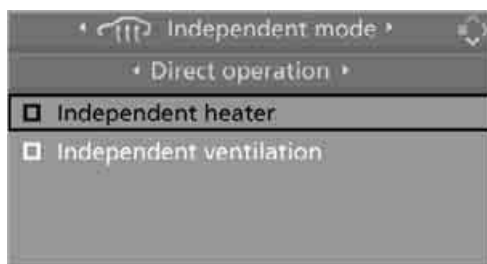
 Never run the auxiliary heater in enclosed spaces, as inhaling the harmful exhaust gas from the engine can lead to loss of consciousness with fatal consequences. The exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless, but highly toxic. Switch off the auxiliary heater before refuelling the car. ◀


 The auxiliary heater will not come on or will switch itself off if there is not enough fuel in the tank for less than approx. 50 km, approx. 30 miles. ◀


Switching on and off directly

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to call up "Climate".
3. Select "Independent mode " and press the controller.
4. Select "Direct operation " and press the controller.
5. Select "Independent heater" or "Independent ventilation" and press the controller.



 The independent ventilation system/auxiliary heater is on.

 The symbol on the automatic air conditioning display flashes.

Preselecting switch-on times

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to call up "Climate".

3. Select "Independent mode " and press the controller.
4. Select "Switch-on times " and press the controller.
5. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2".



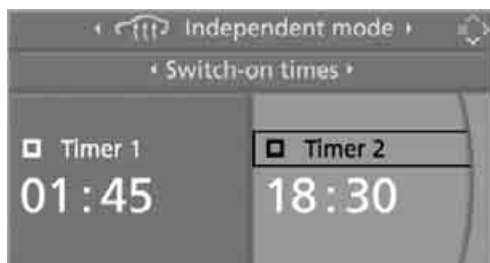
6. Select the time and press the controller. The first part of the setting is selected.



7. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
8. Press the controller to adopt the setting. The next part of the time setting is selected.
9. Complete the setting. Once the setting has been completed, the time is memorised.

Activating the switch-on time

Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2", then press the controller.



The switch-on time is activated.

The symbol on the automatic air conditioning display lights up.

The symbol on the automatic air conditioning display flashes to indicate that the system is on.

The system in question will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. It must then be reactivated. ◀

Remote control*



- 1 Switching on
- 2 Switching off
- 3 Activating the system
- 4 LED: comes on for approx. 5 seconds when the system is activated
- 5 LED: flashes during switching on
- 6 Aerial


The average reception range is approx. 150 m, approx. 500 ft.


You can optimise the reception range by holding the remote control as high in the air as possible with the aerial pointing upwards. When switching on/off, do not touch the aerial or point it at the car. ◀

Switching on/off

1. Press button 3 until the LED 4 comes on.
2. Press the required button within approx. 5 seconds:
 - ▶ To switch on, button 1
 - ▶ To switch off, button 2

The LED 5 flashes rapidly for about 2 seconds to confirm the switch-on/off request.

 The symbol on the automatic air conditioning display flashes.

 If you switch on the independent ventilation system or auxiliary heater with the remote control, the interior light comes on for a short time by way of confirmation. ◀

Interference

The remote control handset may fail to function properly if there is interference from other equipment or devices which use the same radio frequency.


Changing the battery

Change the battery if the LED no longer comes on or flashes when the independent ventilation system or auxiliary heater are switched on.

1. Press in the catch, arrow 1.



2. Remove the cover for the battery compartment, arrow 2.
3. Insert a new battery of the same type. The battery's installed position is marked on the base of the battery compartment.
4. Press the cover back into position.

 Dispose of the old battery only at an authorised collecting point or hand it in to BMW Service. ◀

New remote control

If you would like to start using a new remote control as a second remote control or if you have lost your remote control, BMW Service will gladly initialise it for you.

You can use two remote controls for your car.


Integrated universal remote control*

Principle


The integrated universal remote control replaces up to three different hand-held transmitters for various systems or devices that are operated by radio remote control, for example a gate opener and domestic alarm systems. The integrated universal remote control identifies and learns the signals transmitted by the original hand-held transmitters.

The signal from an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed to one of the three memory buttons **1**. The system in question can then be operated with the memory button **1** programmed in this way with the ignition switched on. Transmission of the signal is shown by the LED **2**.

If and when you decide to sell your car, in the interests of security clear the programmed functions first, see page 110.

 During the programming operation and before a programmed system is operated with the integrated universal remote control, make sure that no persons, animals or objects are within the pivoting or movement range of the system in question, otherwise there is a risk of injury or damage. Comply also with the safety instructions supplied with the original hand-held transmitter. ◀

Checking compatibility

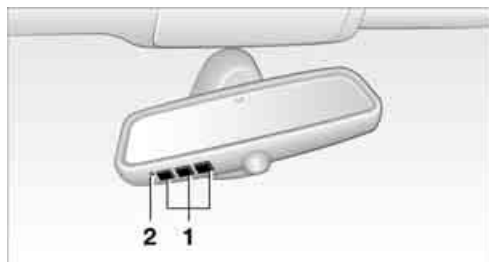
 If this symbol appears on the pack or in the instructions supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, you can assume that the radio remote control device will be compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

A list of compatible hand-held transmitters is available from the fax polling number +49 (0)6838 907 283 3333. If you would like more details, please call the freephone

Homelink hotline at +49 (0)6838 907 277, or 0800 0466 35465 from within Germany.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

Programming



- 1 Memory buttons
- 2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitter

1. Switch on the ignition, see page 56.
2. When using for the first time: press the two outer memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds, until the LED **2** flashes. All memorised programs are deleted.
3. Point the original hand-held transmitter at memory buttons **1** at a distance of approx. 5 to 20 cm, approx. 2 to 8 in.




The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and memory buttons **1** depends on the system according to which the original hand-held transmitter operates. ◀

4. Press the command button on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control at the same time. The LED **2** initially flashes slowly. When the LED **2** starts to flash rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not start to flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, change the distance.

5. To program additional original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the same signal as the original hand-held transmitter.


You can operate the system when the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on.

 If the system fails to function even after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To establish this, either consult the operating instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or press and hold down the programmed memory button **1** on the universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly for a short while and then remains lit for about two seconds, the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. If it uses an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described under Alternating-code hand-held transmitter. ◀

Alternating-code hand-held transmitter

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the device to be operated. The instructions should indicate what scope there is for synchronisation.

When programming an alternating-code hand-held transmitter, the following points should in addition be noted:

 Programming will be easier if another person is available to assist you. ◀

1. Park your car within the range of the radio remote control device.
2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in Fixed-code hand-held transmitter.
3. Establish the location of the button on the receiver of the device to be operated, e.g. on the drive system.

4. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be operated. Once step 4 has been performed, step 5 must be completed within about 30 seconds.
5. Press programmed memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control three times.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the same signal as the original hand-held transmitter.

Deleting memorised programs

Press the two outer memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds, until the LED **2** flashes: All memorised programs are deleted.

It is not possible to delete programs individually.

Roller sun blinds*

Roller sun blind for rear window



Press the button in the driver's door.

Roller sun blinds for rear side windows

Pull the blind out at its loop and secure it to the retainer.

Glove box


Opening



Pull the handle. The light in the glove box comes on.


Closing

Swing the lid up.

 After using the glove box while the car is moving, close its lid without delay, so that it cannot cause injury in the event of an accident. This also applies to the lid* of the compartment next to the steering column. ◀

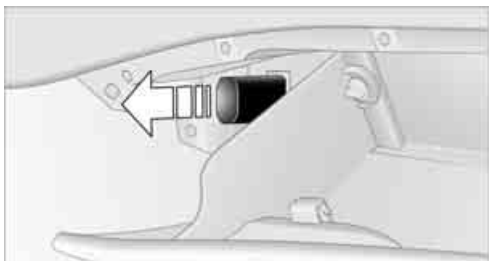
Locking

Lock with a key.

 If, for example, you hand over the remote control to hotel staff without the integrated key, see page 26, the glove box cannot be unlocked. ◀

Rechargeable hand lamp*

This is inside the glove box, on the left. The lamp can remain permanently plugged in. Pull the lamp out of its holder whenever it is needed.

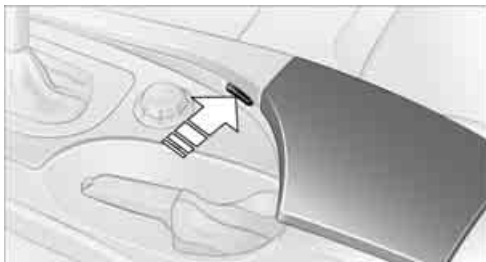


Make sure that the lamp is switched off before inserting it in the holder in order to avoid possible damage. ◀

Centre armrest front

The compartment in the centre armrest has two sections.

To open the lid



Press the button. The lid opens slightly and can be folded up.

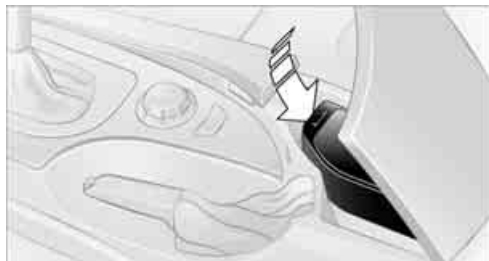
Depending on the equipment, in the top section you will find a compartment with a mat, which can be removed for cleaning, or a telephone cradle*.

Open the top section



Press the button and fold the lid up.


Access to lower section



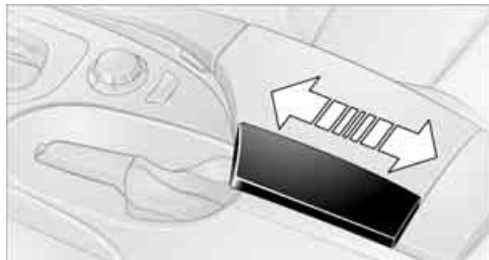
Press the button on the front and fold the upper section or telephone cradle up.

Ventilating the lower section*

Slide the cover in the lower section up.

 The temperature inside the ventilated section may become quite high, depending on the automatic air conditioning settings. Should this be the case, slide the cover down to close the vent. ◀


Adjusting*



Move the section of the centre armrest illustrated to the required position.


Storage compartments

There are further compartments next to the steering column*, on the doors and in the centre console at the front* and rear*. There are elasticated pockets on the backs of the front seats, and there is a net* in the front passenger's footwell.

 Do not place hard or sharp-edged objects in the elasticated pockets or net, otherwise there will be an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. ◀

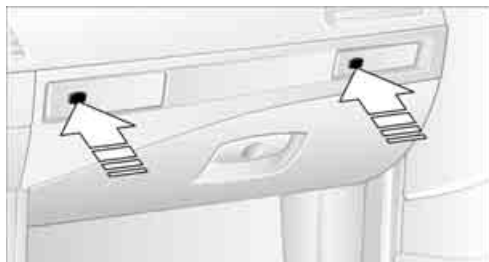
Coat hooks

There are coat hooks on the grab handles in the rear seating area.


 Items of clothing hung from the hooks must not obstruct the driver's view. Do not hang heavy objects from the hooks, as they could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving. ◀

Drinks holders*

Opening



Briefly press the button.

 Do not place glassware in the drinks holders, otherwise there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. ◀

Closing

Press the centre of the trim and push in the drinks holder.

Front ashtray*

Opening

Push back the cover.

Emptying



Press the ashtray at the front: it pops up and can be removed.

On cars with non-smoker package, the insert is removed in the same way.

Rear ashtray*



Emptying

Press the entire lid down. The ashtray pops up and can be removed.

Cigarette lighter, front*



With the engine running or the ignition switched on, press in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed when it pops back out.



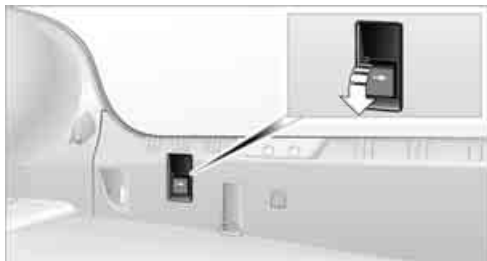
Hold the hot cigarette lighter only by its knob, otherwise you may suffer burns. When leaving the car, remove the remote control, otherwise children could operate the cigarette lighter and possibly burn themselves. ◀

Connecting electrical appliances

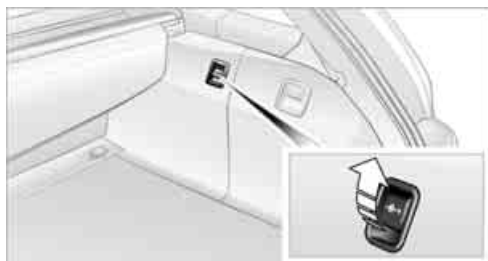
Power sockets

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a power socket for a 12 V torch or car vacuum cleaner, etc. rated at up to about 200 W. Make sure that the socket is not damaged by attempting to insert plugs of the wrong pattern. This applies to all power sockets in the car. The socket is fitted with a detachable cap in conjunction with the non-smoker's package.

Saloon: In the luggage compartment*



Touring: In the load area



To gain access to the power socket:
Open the cap.

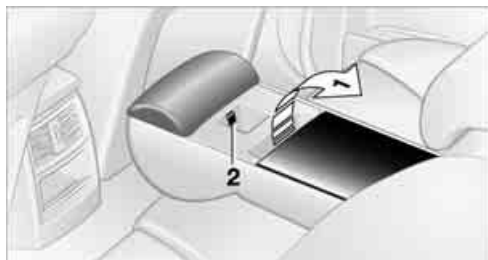
Rear centre console*



Depending on the equipment specification, the power sockets at the rear are fitted with caps or a cigarette lighter. See Cigarette lighter, front, page 113.

To gain access to the power socket:
Pull off the cap or cigarette lighter.

Centre armrest at rear

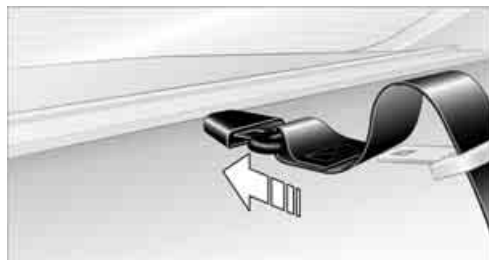


Storage compartment*:
Pull the cover upwards, arrow 1.

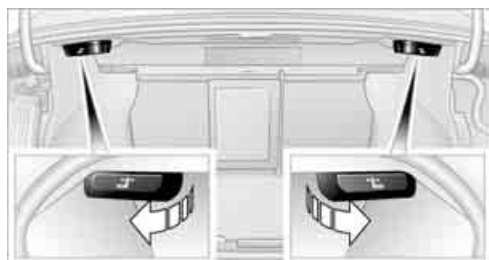
Access to drinks holders*:
Press 2 and open the lid.

Saloon: Through-loading system*

1. Open the belt buckle for the central seat belt at the rear and insert the tongue on the end of the belt in the designated mounting on the rear shelf.




2. Push the corresponding head restraint fully down, see page 47.
3. To release, pull the corresponding lever in the luggage compartment.



4. The released seat back moves forward slightly. Fold the seat back forward at the head restraint.



 When folding back to the seating position, make sure that the catch engages properly, otherwise even braking or swerving, for example, could cause items of luggage to be displaced forwards into the interior compartment, endangering the occupants. ◀

There are lashing eyes in the luggage compartment to which a net* or retaining straps can be attached when loads have to be secured, see page 126.

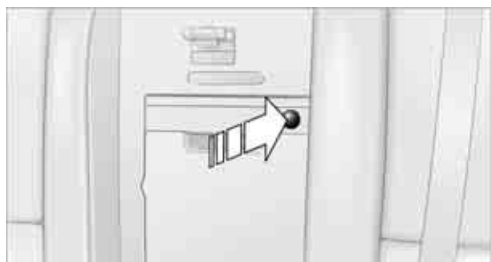
Ski bag*

This enables up to four pairs of standard skis or up to two snowboards to be carried safely and kept clean.

You can stow skis up to a length of 2.10 m, approx. 7 ft, with the aid of the ski bag. If skis of this length are carried, however, the capacity of the ski bag is lower in view of its tapered design.

Loading

1. Fold down the centre armrest, press the button and open the cover.



2. Press the button again; the cover in the luggage compartment opens. The cover in the luggage compartment will also open if you press the button hard enough the first time.
3. Lay out the ski bag between the front seats and fill it. The zip fastener provides better access to the objects stowed in the bag and facilitates drying the ski bag.

4. Insert the tongue of the ski bag retaining strap in the centre belt buckle marked CENTER.




Make sure that the skis are clean before they are inserted into the bag. Wrap protective material around any sharp edges to avoid causing damage.

Securing the load



After loading the ski bag, secure the bag and its contents by tightening the retaining strap at its turnbuckle.

 Secure the ski bag in the manner described, otherwise even heavy braking or sudden swerving could be sufficient to endanger the car's occupants. ◀


To stow away the ski bag, follow the opposite procedure as for loading.

Removing ski bag

The ski bag can be removed completely, e.g. for ease of drying or so that you can use other fittings in its place.

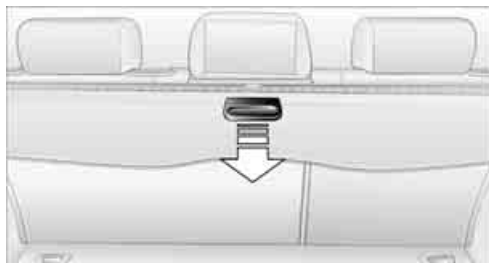


1. Pull the handle forwards and lift out the ski bag.
2. Close the lid in the luggage compartment.


 For more information on the various fittings available, contact BMW Service. ◀

Touring: load area


Load area cover



Pull out the cover and locate it in the holders. The cover can support the weight of light articles, e.g. clothing.

 Do not place any heavy, hard objects on the cover, as even heavy braking or sudden swerving could be sufficient to endanger the car's occupants.

Do not allow the cover to be retracted in an uncontrolled manner, as this could damage it. ◀


 The load area cover is raised when the rear window or tailgate is opened. Before closing the rear window or tailgate, press the cover down until it engages in position. ◀


Enlarging the load area

The rear seat back is split one-third/two-thirds. You can fold down both sections individually as a means of enlarging the load area.




Reach into the recess and pull forwards.

 When folding back to the seating position, make sure that the catches engage properly. The red warning zone in the recess then disappears. If this is not done, even braking or swerving could be sufficient to displace items of luggage into the occupant compartment, endangering the occupants. ◀

 Comply with the notes on seat belts on page 42, or there may be a risk to your personal safety. ◀

Partition net



 Do not allow the partition net to be retracted in an uncontrolled manner, as this could result in injuries and cause damage to the net. ◀

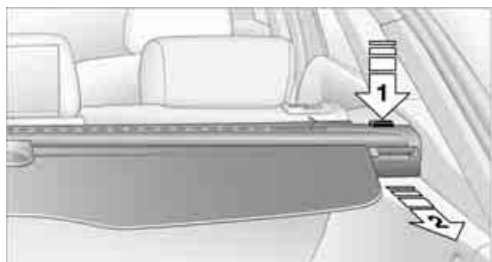
With normal load area

Pull the partition net out of the casing by the loop. Hold the rail at both ends and insert in the holders, see arrow 1. This is best done working from the rear seat.

If you no longer require the partition net, take hold of the rail at both ends and remove it from the holders, arrow 2. Allow the partition net to slide slowly into the cassette.

With enlarged load area

1. Fold down both rear seat backs, see Enlarging the load area.
2. Release the casing at the buttons on either side, arrow 1.



3. Pull out the casing to the rear, arrow 2, taking care not to tilt it.

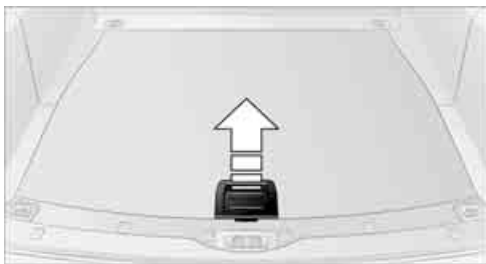


4. Push the casing into the guides on the reverse of the seat backs.
5. Carefully pull out the partition net and insert it in the front holders, see With normal load area. This is best done working from the front seat.

To restore the original arrangement, proceed in the reverse order. Finish off by sliding the casing forwards in the holders on both sides until it engages. The red warning zone in the recess then disappears. Tug the casing to check that it is properly locked in position.

Compartment in floor

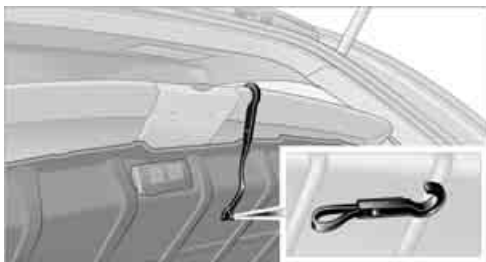
To open: reach into the recess and fold up the handle.



The floor panel flap can be removed.
The partitions in the compartment can be rearranged.

Folding up spare wheel cover

Swing up the cover.



Disengage the hook from the holder and engage it in the floor panel flap.

Before folding down, replace the hook in its original position.

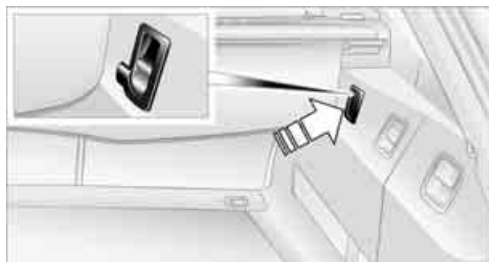
Storage package*

Tensioning straps

You can disengage the right-hand tensioning strap, e.g. to open the side panel. To disengage it, pull it back at the rear end; to engage it, press it into the opening. It can in addition be secured in the middle. This allows you to secure objects of varying sizes with it.

Hook

There are two hooks for securing smaller objects.

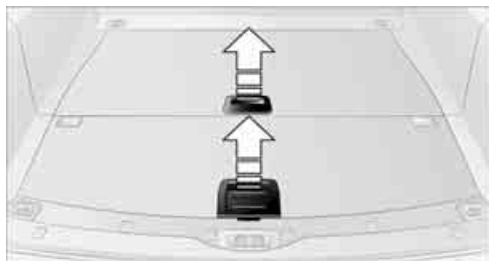


Press at the base and fold out until engaged.

Floor compartments

Front compartment:

- ▷ To open, pull up the front floor panel flap by the handle.
- ▷ To close, press down the front floor panel flap until it engages.

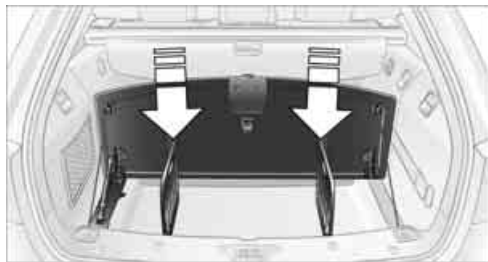


Rear compartment: to open, reach into the recess and fold up the handle.

The rear floor panel flap can be removed.

Partitioning the rear compartment

Fold out the partitions and press down.



! Use the partition net, see page 116, otherwise objects could be dislodged merely by heavy braking, sudden swerving or similar, and endanger the occupants. ◀



The background of the page is a composite image. The top half shows a bright, cloudy sky with sunlight breaking through. The bottom half shows a dark, winding road that curves through a landscape, possibly a valley or a coastal area, with a lighter path leading towards the horizon.

Driving hints

Here is a variety of information that you may require in particular driving situations or operating modes.

Driving precautions

Running-in

Moving parts need a certain time to achieve maximum operating efficiency as a unit. Please comply with the following instructions, which are intended to ensure that your car achieves its optimum operating life and economy.

Engine and final drive

Observe the national speed limits in the country in which you are travelling.

Up to 2000 km, approx. 1200 miles

Drive at varying road and engine speeds, but do not exceed the following values:

- ▷ Petrol engine
4500 rpm, or 160 km/h or 100 mph
- ▷ Diesel engine
3500 rpm, or 150 km/h or 90 mph

Avoid full throttle and do not use the automatic transmission kick-down.

From 2000 km, approx. 1200 miles, onwards

Engine and road speeds can be gradually increased.

Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG

Do not use the acceleration assistant during running-in, see page 61.

Tyres

New tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately, for production reasons. You should therefore drive in a restrained manner for the first 300 km, approx. 200 miles.

Brake system

Brake pads and discs do not achieve a favourable wear and contact pattern until the car has covered about 500 km, approx. 300 miles. Drive with caution during this running-in period.

Clutch

The clutch needs to be run in for about 500 km, approx. 300 miles, before it will operate with maximum efficiency. Operate the clutch gently while running it in.

After fitting new parts

The same running-in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the car's operating life.

General driving notes

Closing the luggage compartment lid/tailgate



Drive only with the luggage compartment lid/tailgate fully closed, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the passenger compartment. ◀

However, should you need to drive with the luggage compartment lid/tailgate open:

1. Close all windows and the glass roof or panorama glass roof.
2. Increase the air volume from the automatic air conditioning considerably, see page 99 or 103.

Hot exhaust system




High temperatures occur in the exhaust system of all vehicles. Never remove the head shields protecting this area, nor apply underseal to them. Make sure that when the car is driven or parked and when the engine is idling, no easily flammable material such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. comes into contact with the hot exhaust pipe. It could ignite and cause a fire, with the risk of severe injuries or damage. ◀

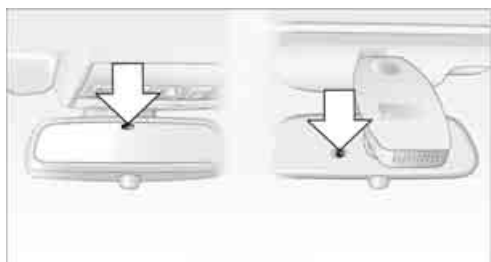
Diesel particle filter*

The diesel particle filter collects soot particles and burns them periodically at high temperatures. This cleaning procedure takes several minutes. Under some circumstances, you may notice it by the fact that the engine temporarily runs more roughly and requires a higher engine speed for normal power development. In addition, the exhaust may cause some noise and emit a small amount of smoke, even after the engine has been switched off.

Mobile communication equipment

 BMW advises against the use of mobile communication equipment such as mobile phones inside the car, unless they are directly connected to an outside aerial. Mutual interference between the car's electronics and such equipment cannot be entirely ruled out. There is moreover no guarantee that the radiation generated when such devices are transmitting will be dissipated out of the car's interior. ◀


Inside and outside mirrors, automatic-dim*



There are two photo-cells in the inside mirror for this purpose. One photo-cell is in the mirror glass, the other slightly offset on the back of the mirror.


In order to ensure that the system functions correctly, keep the photo-cells clean, do not cover the area between the inside mirror and windscreen, and do not affix adhesive labels or stickers of any kind to the windscreen directly in front of the mirror.

Aquaplaning


 When driving on wet or slushy surfaces, reduce speed to prevent a wedge of water forming between the tyre and the road. This situation, known as aquaplaning, means that the tyre can actually lose contact completely with the road surface, so that neither can the car be steered nor the brakes be properly applied. ◀

The risk of aquaplaning increases along with declining tread depth on the tyres, see also Minimum tread depth on page 182.


Wading

 Drive through water only to a max. depth of 30 cm, approx. 1 ft, and no faster than walking pace, otherwise the engine, electrical system and transmission may be damaged. ◀

Use of the handbrake on uphill gradients

 Never try to prevent the car rolling back on an uphill gradient by slipping the clutch; always apply the handbrake. The clutch will otherwise wear rapidly. ◀


Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG

 Drive off quickly when moving off on an uphill gradient. Do not use the accelerator to prevent the car rolling back down a slope; apply the handbrake, to avoid causing the gearbox to overheat. ◀

Starting assistance

The starting assistance enables you to drive off smoothly on uphill gradients. It is not necessary to use the handbrake for this.

1. Hold the car in place by pressing the footbrake.
2. Release the footbrake and drive off without delay.

 The starting assistance holds the car for about 2 seconds after the footbrake has been released. Depending on the car's load or if a trailer is being towed, it could roll back slightly during this period. After releasing the footbrake, move off swiftly straight away, as the starting

assistance will no longer hold the car after about 2 seconds and it will start to roll back. ◀

Safe braking


Your BMW is equipped with ABS as standard. Where a situation requires you to apply the brakes hard, you are advised to do so. Since the car remains steerable, you can avoid obstacles by turning the steering wheel as smoothly as possible.

The pulsating sensation at the brake pedal, combined with the sound of the hydraulic system operating, indicates that ABS is intervening.


Wet roads

In wet conditions or heavy rain, apply the brakes briefly with slight pedal pressure every few kilometres or miles. When doing so, make sure that no other road user is endangered. The resulting heat dries the brake discs and pads. The braking force will then be available immediately if needed.

Downhill gradients

 To avoid impairing the efficiency of the brake system as a result of overheating, drive down long or steep descents in the gear that allows you to keep brake applications to a minimum. Otherwise even slight continuous pressure on the brake pedal could cause overheating, brake pad wear or even brake system failure. ◀

The engine braking effect can be enhanced by selecting a lower gear in the automatic transmission's manual mode, right down to 1st gear if necessary, see page 62. This avoids overburdening the brakes.

 Never drive with the clutch held down, with the transmission in neutral or with the engine switched off; engine braking action will not be present, or there will be no power assistance to the brakes or steering. Make sure that pedal functions are not impaired by floor mats, carpets or other objects. ◀

Corrosion of brake discs

If the car is used only for short distances, is not used for lengthy periods or is subjected to only minor loads, the brake discs will be particularly susceptible to corrosion and the brake pads will collect dirt; this is because the necessary brake pressure for a self-cleaning effect has not been generated.

When the brakes are applied, corroded discs tend to judder, and even lengthy brake applications usually fail to eliminate this effect entirely.

When car is parked

Moisture condensate forms in the automatic air conditioning and is discharged underneath the car. Traces of water on the ground are therefore normal.

Before entering a car wash

Fold in the outside mirrors, see page 49, as they could otherwise be damaged due to the car's width.

With comfort access and automatic transmission

Insert the remote control in the ignition lock. The engine can be switched off with the selector lever in position N. See also page 37.


Rule of the road

When entering countries where the traffic drives on the opposite side of the road to the country in which your car is registered, certain measures are necessary to avoid dazzling the drivers of oncoming vehicles.

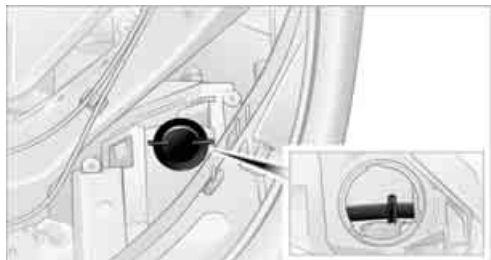
Halogen lights

BMW Service is able to supply masking film. Note the instructions enclosed with the film when applying.

Xenon headlights*

 Do not make adjustments while the headlights are still hot, otherwise there is a risk of burns. ◀

1. Switch off the light and remove the remote control from the ignition lock.
2. In the engine compartment, turn the stoppers on the headlights anti-clockwise and remove.

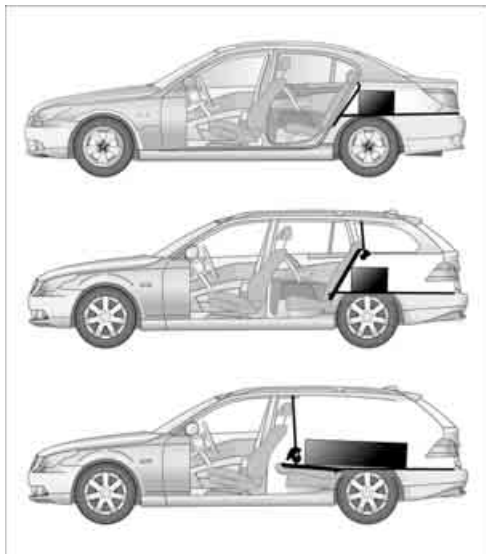


3. Driving on left: push each lever towards the middle of the car.
Driving on right: push each lever towards the outer edge of the car.

Load

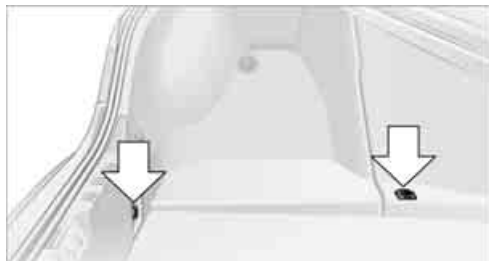
! Avoid overloading the car, as this could cause the tyres' load capacity limit to be exceeded. The tyres could then overheat and sustain internal damage. This could lead to sudden pressure loss. ◀

Loading



- ▶ Position heavy objects low down and as far forward as possible, ideally directly behind the rear seat back.
- ▶ Wrap protective material round sharp corners and edges.
- ▶ When carrying very heavy loads with no passengers on the back seat, insert each of the outer seat belts into their opposite buckles.
- ▶ Do not stack items higher than the top edge of the seat backs.
- ▶ Touring:
Extend the partition net, see page 116, making sure that no objects can penetrate the net.
Place protective material around sharp-edged or pointed objects which could strike the rear window while the car is on the move.


Securing the load



- ▷ Small and relatively light items can be retained with the tensioning straps, a load-area net* or other suitable straps.



- ▷ BMW Service can supply suitable lashings* for securing larger or heavier loads. To secure these lashings, there are four eyes in the luggage compartment or load area, see picture.
- ▷ Please note the information supplied with load securing equipment.

 Always stow and secure the load as described above, so that it cannot endanger the car's occupants, for example if sudden braking or avoiding action is necessary. Secure lashings only to the lashing eyes, see illustration, otherwise the lashings could work loose or the car could be damaged.

Do not exceed the car's permitted gross weight or the axle load limits, see page 214, otherwise the car's operating safety may be endangered and the construction and use regulations infringed.

Heavy or hard objects should not be carried loose inside the car, since they could be dislodged, for example by heavy braking, sudden avoiding action or similar, and endanger the occupants. ◀

Roof rack*

A special roof rack system is available as an accessory for your BMW. If it is used, please comply with the installation instructions supplied.

Mounting points



The mounting points are in the door cutouts or on the roof rails*.

Loading the roof rack

A loaded roof rack alters the car's road behaviour and steering response quite considerably, by moving its centre of gravity.

When loading the roof rack, ensure that the specified roof load limit, the car's gross weight limit and the axle loads are not exceeded.

The relevant figures are shown under Weights from page 214.

The roof load must be uniformly distributed and should not be too large in area. Heavy items should always be placed at the bottom. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for raising the glass roof and that no objects extend back far enough to be struck by the luggage compartment lid/tailgate when it is opened.

Correct, secure loading of the roof rack will prevent items shifting or falling off during the journey.

Drive smoothly and avoid violent acceleration, braking or cornering.

Towing a trailer

Information about permissible trailer loads appears on page 217 onwards. BMW Service will provide information about ways to increase these load ratings.

Cover flap



Removing

Take hold of the cover flap for the trailer tow hitch* by the cutout from beneath, and pull off to the rear.

Fitting

Hold the cover flap against the trim from beneath, push it in the guide and press on fully.

Trailer tow hitch*

Cars fitted with a trailer tow hitch prior to delivery are equipped with uprated suspension at the rear axle and a more powerful engine cooling system, as appropriate for the model.

Look after a detachable ball end in accordance with the manufacturer's operating instructions, to ensure that it can be fitted and removed without difficulty.

Due to the body reinforcements at the rear end of the car, the effect of the regenerable bumper system is limited.

Fitting and removing

The ball hitch is in the luggage compartment or load area, beneath the floor panel flap.

The procedure for fitting and removing the ball hitch is described in the enclosed manufacturer's operating instructions.

Before a journey

Nose weight

It is important to ensure that the nose weight is never less than a minimum of 25 kg, approx. 55 lb. Information about nose weight limits appears on page 217 onwards. The nose weight should be kept close to this limit.

The trailer's nose weight affects the towing vehicle and thus increases its weight. The weight of the trailer tow hitch and the nose weight reduce the maximum payload of your BMW. Please ensure that these do not cause the gross weight limit of the towing vehicle to be exceeded if a trailer is being towed.

Loads

When loading the trailer, make sure that the weight is kept as low as possible and stowed if possible close to the axle.

A low centre of trailer gravity makes the outfit much more stable and safe to drive.

Do not exceed either the trailer's permitted gross weight or the specified permitted towing load for the car. The smaller value is the limit which should be adhered to.

Tyre pressures

Take great care to check the BMW's and the trailer's tyre pressures. For the car, the tyre inflation pressures for heavy loads apply, see page 182. After each correction of the tyre pressures, reinitialise the Run Flat Indicator, see page 87.

For the trailer, comply with the manufacturer's specifications.

Run Flat Indicator


Reinitialise the Run Flat Indicator after a trailer has been attached or detached, see page 87.

Outside mirrors


Two outside mirrors which bring both rear corners of the trailer into your field of view are required by law. Mirrors of this kind can be obtained from BMW Service.

Electrical consumers

When towing a caravan, try to avoid operating electrical equipment for too long at a time, in order to limit the drain on the car's battery.

 Before starting a journey, check that the trailer's rear lights are operating correctly. It is an offence to drive without functioning rear lights, which would moreover put other road users at risk. ◀

Towing a trailer

 Observe the speed limit in the country in which you are driving, but do not exceed 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph, when towing a trailer, otherwise the outfit may become unstable. ◀

Counteracting snaking

If the trailer nevertheless begins to snake, the outfit can only be stabilised by braking hard immediately. Only attempt to steer out of the situation if this is absolutely essential, and make any steering movements as cautiously as possible and without endangering other road users.

Trailer Stability Control*

The system helps you to neutralise a trailer's tendency to swing from side to side. It detects swinging and automatically brakes the car promptly so that the car is no longer in a critical road-speed range and the trailer is stabilised.

The system functions whenever the car is towing a trailer and the power socket for the trailer is connected, starting at a speed of approx. 65 km/h, approx. 40 mph.

If the power socket for the trailer is in use, but no trailer is attached due to the use of a bicycle carrier with lights, for example, the system may still be operational in extreme driving situations.

The system is unable to intervene if the trailer jack-knives, e.g. on roads that are slippery or have a loose surface. Trailers with a high centre of gravity can tip over before a swinging motion is detected.

The system is not operational if DSC is deactivated or malfunctioning, see page 84.

Gradients

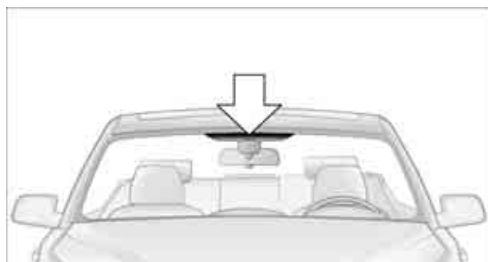
In the interest of safety and to avoid holding up other traffic, do not attempt to climb gradients steeper than 12% when towing a trailer. If a supplementary permit for heavier trailer loads has been obtained, the limit is 8%, see page 217.

Downhill gradients

Special care must be taken when descending gradients, where a trailer is more susceptible to snaking.

Before starting to descend, always change down to the next lower gear, if necessary as far as 1st gear, and drive down the hill slowly.

Climatic comfort windscreen*



Use the area marked in the illustration for your garage-door opener, electronic devices for toll logging, or similar. This area does not have an infrared-reflecting coating and is clearly distinguishable from inside the car.





Navigation

This chapter describes how you can enter destinations and choose your route, so that your navigation system guides you reliably to your destination.

Starting navigation system*

Your navigation system can determine the precise position of your car by means of satellites and guide you reliably to any specified destination.

Navigation DVD

A special navigation DVD is required for the navigation system. This navigation DVD differs for the Professional and Business navigation systems. The latest version can be obtained from BMW Service.

Professional navigation system*



Use the lower drive for the navigation DVD.

Business navigation system*



Use the same drive for navigation DVDs and audio CDs.

All the data required for each route guidance procedure is held in the navigation system's buffer memory. The navigation DVD can then be removed during route guidance. This enables you to listen to audio CDs during route


guidance. A message appears on the control display if new data from the navigation DVD is required.

If you change the navigation DVD, a destination that has not been saved will be deleted.

Inserting navigation DVD

1. Insert the navigation DVD with the label side uppermost.
2. Wait for several seconds to allow the contents of the DVD to be read in.

Removing navigation DVD

1. Press  button 1.
The DVD is ejected part way out of the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

If the DVD is not ejected from the drive, it is possible that the drive is blocked. A message appears on the control display.

Display in the assistance window

Professional navigation system:

You can have the route or your car's position displayed in the assistance window. This information remains displayed even if you change to another application.

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window.



2. Press the controller.
Further menu items are displayed.
3. Select the desired view of the route or
"Vehicle position".



4. Press the controller.
The assistance window is constantly updated
as you travel.


Destination input

You can choose from the following options for entering a destination:

- ▷ Entering a destination manually, see below
- ▷ Entering a destination via voice commands*, see page 138
- ▷ Selecting the destination via Information, see page 140
- ▷ Selecting a destination from a list, see Destinations list, page 140
- ▷ Selecting a destination from the address book, see page 141
- ▷ Selecting home address, see page 144

Once you have selected a destination, you are ready to start route guidance, see page 147.

Using navigation

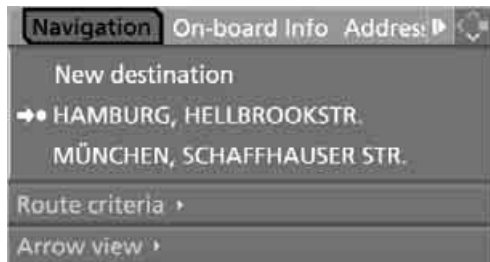
 Only enter data when the car is standing still, and always obey the traffic regulations and road signs in the event of any contradiction between the traffic situation and the instructions given by the navigation system. Failure to do so may result in an infringement of traffic laws and put the car's occupants and other road users at risk. ◀

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Move the controller to the right to call up "Navigation".



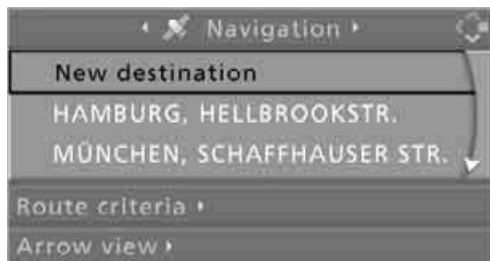
3. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.



Entering a destination manually

The wordmatch principle makes the input of place names and streets easier, see page 146. This makes it possible to enter different spellings, and names are completed automatically so that stored place names and streets can be called up quickly.

1. If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
"New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.



3. If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Address input" is selected and press the controller.



The system in addition supports you with the following special features:

- ▷ If you do not enter a street name, you will be guided to the centre of the town or city.
- ▷ You can skip input of the country, town or city if you wish to retain previous inputs.

Selecting country

1. Select "Country" or the country displayed and press the controller.
The list of available countries is displayed.



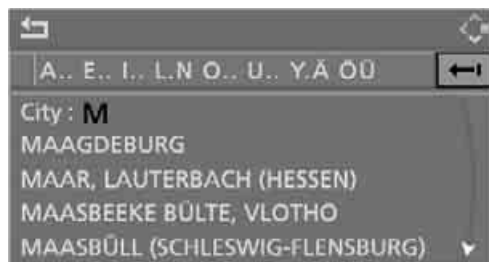
2. Select destination country and press the controller.
With the Professional navigation system, "Europa" can also be selected.



At least the town/city or its postcode must be entered in order to start route guidance.

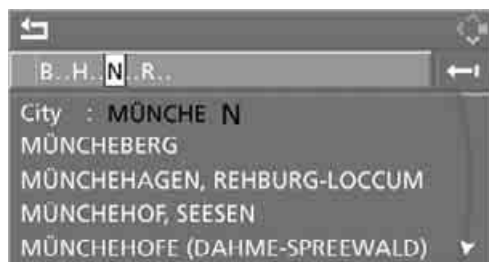
Entering a destination by town or city name

1. Select "City" or the town/city displayed and press the controller.
2. Select the initial letter and press the controller.
A list of all places starting with that letter is shown on the control display.

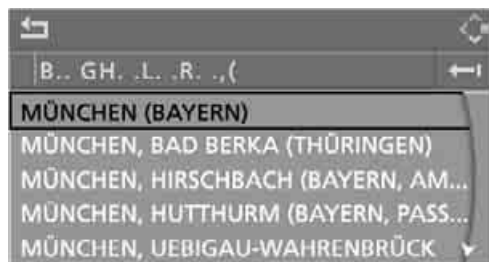
3. To delete any letters, if necessary:



- ▷ To delete individual numbers or letters:
Move the controller to the right to select  and press the controller.
 - ▷ To delete all numbers or letters:
Move the controller to the right to select  and hold down the controller.
4. Enter more letters if necessary.
The list is gradually narrowed down with every subsequent letter that you enter.



5. If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until the town or city name is selected in the list and press the controller.



Entering destination via postcode

1. Select "City" or "City / Postcode" and press the controller.
2. Entering postcode:
Select the individual characters and press the controller each time.



- ▶ To enter spaces, if necessary:
Select the _ symbol and press the controller.
 - ▶ To delete individual numbers or letters:
Move the controller to the right to select **←|** and press the controller.
 - ▶ To delete all numbers or letters:
Move the controller to the right to select **←|** and hold down the controller.
3. Select postcode and press the controller.
The name of the appropriate destination is displayed.
 4. Move the highlighted marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering road, house number and junction

After entering the street, you can add the junction or house number.

Entering a street and junction

1. Select "Street" or the street displayed and press the controller.
2. Enter the street.
The street is entered in the same way as the town/city.



Enter the junction in the same way as the street.

Entering a street without indicating a town/city

With the Professional navigation system:

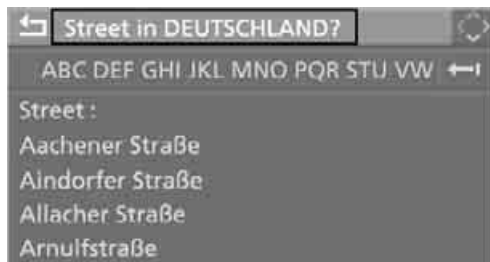
You can also enter a street without indicating a town or city. In this case, all streets are offered within the country indicated. The respective town or city is shown after the street name.

If a town or city has already been entered, this entry can be cancelled. This may be useful in instances where the desired street cannot be found in the indicated town or city because it belongs to a different suburb, for example.

1. Move the highlighted marker to the uppermost field.
The **←|** arrow is selected.



2. Turn the controller to the right until a request appears to enter a street within the country, and press the controller.



3. Move the highlighted marker to the second field from the top and enter the street.

Entering a house number

1. Select "Building number" and press the controller.
2. To enter the house number:
Select the individual characters and press the controller each time.
3. Move the highlighted marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until the house number is selected and press the controller.

Only house numbers that are stored on the navigation DVD for the street in question can be entered.

Business navigation system:

If not all the house numbers in a street are stored on the navigation DVD, a selection with ranges of numbers is displayed.

Starting route guidance from a manual destination input



Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

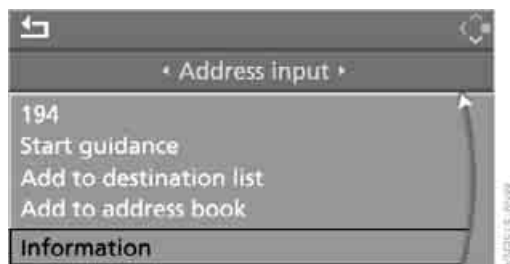
Route guidance is started immediately.

If route guidance does not start straight away:
Select "Add to destination list" and press the controller.

The destination is stored in the destinations list, see page 140.

Displaying information on the destination

Business navigation system:





Select "Information" and press the controller.

For further notes on the information, see page 140.

Entering a destination via voice commands*

In conjunction with the Professional navigation system, you can enter a desired destination via the voice input system. To enter a destination, it is possible at any time to make entries via voice commands or via iDrive. To do so, simply reactivate the voice input system, if necessary.

 You can have the possible commands read aloud to you via ›Options‹. ◀

1. Press the  button on the steering wheel or in the centre console.

 2. ›Address input‹




Selecting a country

 Say the destination country.

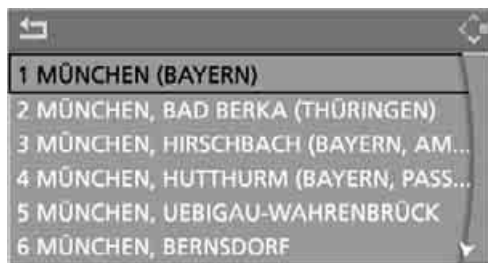
Say the destination country in the language of the voice input system.

Entering a destination

To enter a destination, spell it in the manner in which it is spelled in the destination country. Say the letters fluently and at normal volume, and avoid unnatural emphases and pauses.

 1. Spell the name of the town or city: Say at least the first three letters of the town or city. The more letters you say, the more precisely the system will recognise the town or city.

The system can propose up to 20 destinations that match your entries. Up to 6 entries are displayed at a time on the control display.



 The system suggests a town or city.

2. Select place or country:

›Yes‹

or to select another place:

›No‹

Select entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹.

The following options are available:

›next page‹: other entries in the list are displayed

›Repeat‹: the town or city can be spelled again.


The town or city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:

Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.


Entering a street and a house number

The street is entered in the same manner as the town or city.

To enter the house number:

 Say the house number.

Starting route guidance

 ›Start guidance‹

Route guidance is started immediately.

Saving a destination

The destination is added to the destination list or can be stored in the address book.

 ›Add to destination list‹ or

›Add to address book‹.

Selecting a destination from a map

Professional navigation system:

If you know only the position of a place or street, you can enter the destination with the aid of a map. You can narrow down the destination on the map by means of cross-hairs and then transfer it for route guidance.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
- "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.



3. Select "Destination input map" and press the controller.

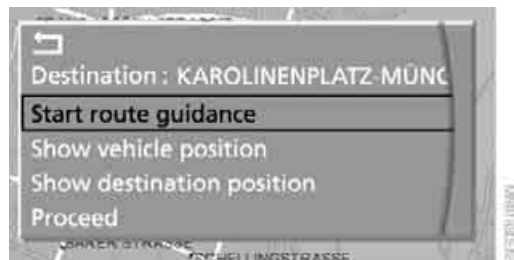


A map section is displayed on the control display:

- ▶ Around the current destination during route guidance
- ▶ Around the last destination entered if route guidance is switched off




4. Turn the controller to alter the scale. Move the controller in the desired direction to shift the map. The controller can be moved left, right, forward, back and also diagonally.
5. To transfer the destination for route guidance or save it, press the controller. The selected destination and further menu items are displayed.
6. Select the desired menu item:
 - ▶ "Start route guidance" starts route guidance.
 - ▶ "Show vehicle position" places your car's position at the centre of the map.
 - ▶ "Show destination position" places the current destination at the centre of the map.
 - ▶ "Proceed" changes back to the "Destination input map".
 - ▶ ↵ to exit the menu.



7. Press the controller.

The map for destination input can also be called up in the map view:

Select the  symbol and press the controller.

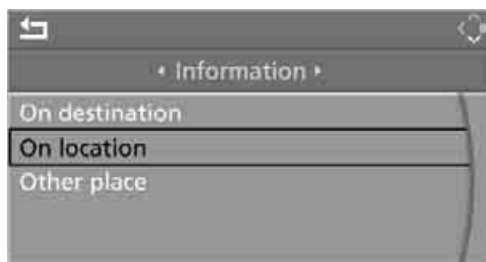
Selecting the destination via Information

You can call up selected destinations, e.g. hotels, tourist attractions or hospitals, phone them and transfer these destinations for route guidance if you choose.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
"New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
3. Select "Information" and press the controller.



4. Select place:
 - ▷ "On destination"
 - ▷ "On location"
 - ▷ "Other place"
 - ▷ Business navigation system:
"On country"



5. Press the controller.

6. Make your selection, e.g. "Hotels and restaurants", and press the controller.
The control display shows destinations arranged by distance or in alphabetical order.



7. Select a destination and press the controller.
8. Select a menu item:
 - ▷ To transfer the address to the destinations list and start route guidance: Select "Accept as destination" and press the controller.
 - ▷ To establish a telephone connection: Select "Place call" and press the controller.
 - ▷ Business navigation system: To display the address and phone number, select "Details" and press the controller.

To exit the menu:

Select the  arrow and press the controller.

Destinations list

The last 20 destinations entered into the system are shown in the destinations list. You can call up these destinations and incorporate them into route guidance.

If you are planning a longer journey, for example, you can save all the destinations you wish to drive to in the destinations list in advance, see Entering a destination manually on page 134.

Select "Navigation" and press the controller.



The destination last entered is listed first in the destinations list.

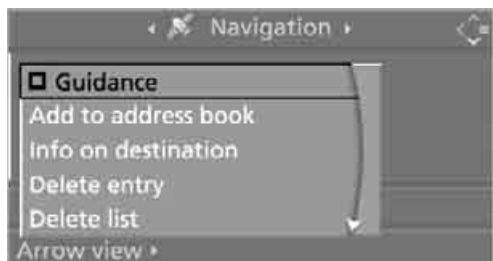
➡ This symbol identifies the current destination.

To show other destinations in the destinations list:

Turn controller.

Incorporating the destination into route guidance

1. Select the desired destination from the destinations list and press the controller.
2. Select "Guidance" and press the controller.



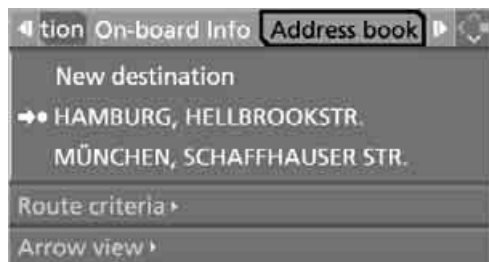
Editing the destination list

1. Select the desired destination in the destinations list and press the controller.
2. The selected destination can be edited:
 - ▶ To save the entry:
Select "Add to address book".
 - ▶ To display information on the destination:
Select "Info on destination".
 - ▶ To delete the entry:
Select "Delete entry".
 - ▶ To delete all entries:
Select "Delete list". Route guidance is switched off.
 - ▶ To change the entry:
Select "Change". For operation, see Entering a destination by town or city name, page 135.
3. Press the controller.

Address book

Calling up the address book

iDrive concept, see page 14.



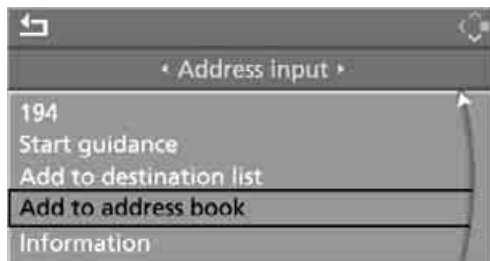
Select "Address book" and press the controller.

Storing destinations in the address book

You can save approx. 100 destinations in the address book.

Business and Professional navigation systems

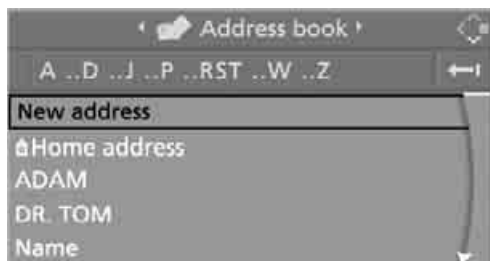
1. Entering a destination manually, see page 134.
2. Select "Add to address book" and press the controller.



You can also save a destination from the destinations list in the address book, see page 141.

Professional navigation system

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select "New address" and press the controller.



3. Select "Enter address yourself" and press the controller.
4. Enter the name and address.
5. Select "Save address" and press the controller.

The entry is saved in the address book.

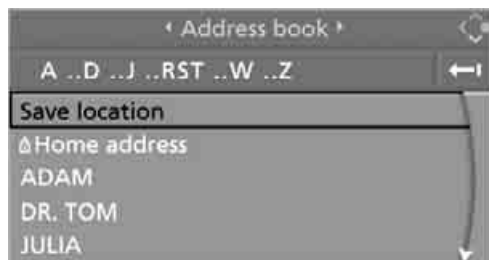
You can also save a destination from the destinations list in the address book, see page 140.

Saving the car's position*

The car's position can be transferred to the address book.

Business navigation system

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Save location" is selected and press the controller.



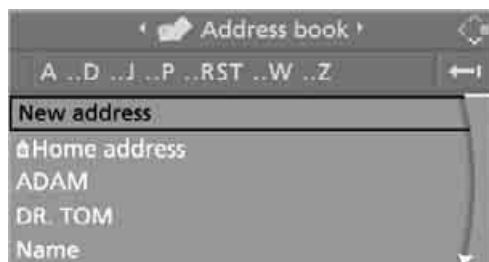
The name given can be modified. Operating principle, see Entering a destination manually, page 134.

3. Select "Save address" and press the controller.

You can transfer your current position to the address book even if you have left the area digitised on the navigation DVD. To do this, you have to enter a name.

Professional navigation system

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "New address" is selected and press the controller.



3. Select "Use current location as address" and press the controller.
The name given can be modified. Operating

principle, see Entering a destination manually, page 134.

4. Select "Save address" and press the controller.

You can transfer your current position to the address book even if you have left the area digitised on the navigation DVD. To do this, you have to enter a name.

Selecting destinations from the address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.

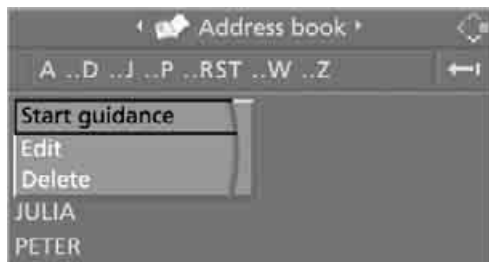
The stored entries are displayed on the control display.



2. Select an entry and press the controller.

To start route guidance:

Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

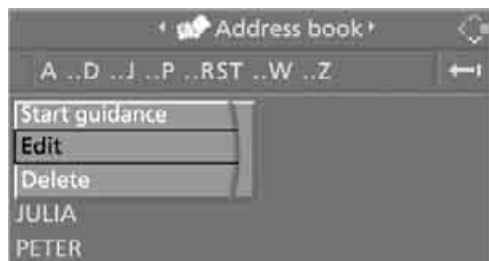


Changing destinations from address book

Business navigation system

You can change the name of the entry.

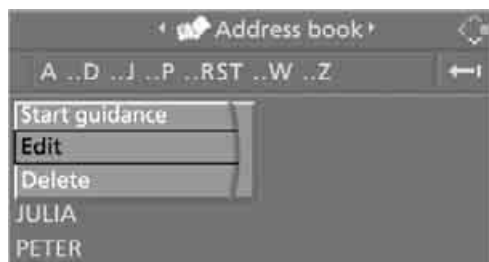
1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select an entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Edit" and press the controller.



4. Change the name.
Operating principle, see Entering a destination manually, page 134.

Professional navigation system

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select an entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Edit" and press the controller.



4. Change entry.
Operating principle, see Entering a destination manually, page 134.

Deleting destinations from address book individually

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select an entry and press the controller.

3. Select "Delete" and press the controller.



Deleting all destinations from address book

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Delete data" and press the controller.



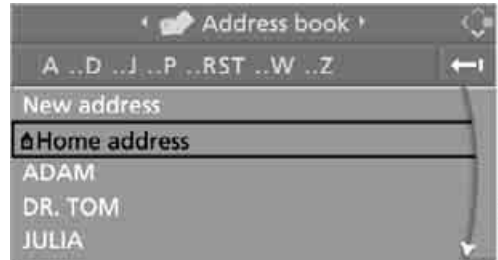
5. Select "Delete address book" and press the controller.
6. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Saving home address

You can save the car's position or the current destination as your home address in the address book. This entry appears in second place in the address book.

Business navigation system

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Home address" is selected and press the controller.



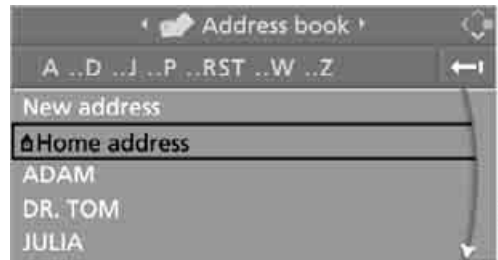
3. Select "Use current location as address" or "Save current destination" and press the controller.

To use your home address as the destination: Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

To display the home address: Select "Details" and press the controller.

Professional navigation system

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Home address" is selected and press the controller.



3. Select "Use current location as address" or "Save current destination" during route guidance and press the controller.

To use your home address as the destination:

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

To change the entry:

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Edit" and press the controller.
Operating principle, see Entering a destination manually, page 134.

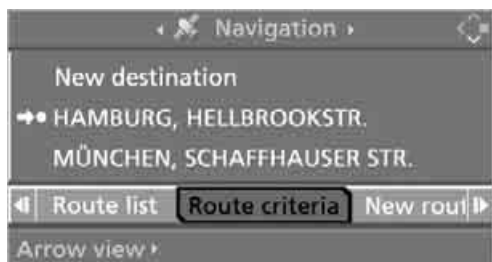
Selecting a route

You can influence the route calculated by selecting various route criteria. You can change the route criteria as often as you like during destination input or during route guidance.

The route is planned according to fixed rules. The type of road is taken into account, e.g. motorways or winding roads. Details of the road types are stored on the navigation DVD. For this reason, the route proposed by the system will not necessarily be the one the driver expects from experience.

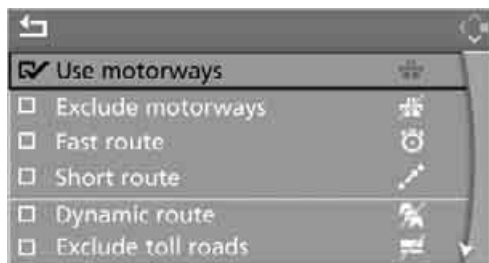
Altering route criteria

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route criteria" is selected and press the controller.



The various criteria are listed on the control display.

3. Select a route criterion for the route:
 - ▶ Professional navigation system:
"Use motorways"
Motorways and arterial roads are given priority.
 - ▶ "Exclude motorways"
Motorways are avoided as far as possible.
 - ▶ "Fast route"
The fast route, being a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads
 - ▶ "Short route"
Short route, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be
4. Press the controller.




✓ The route criterion is selected.

5. Select additional criteria for the route as appropriate, then press the controller:
 - ▶ "Dynamic route"
The route is automatically changed in the event of traffic congestion. Depending on the type of road and the nature and length of the traffic congestion, the route can also be calculated such that it cuts across the traffic congestion.
 - ▶ "Exclude toll roads"
Toll roads are avoided as far as possible.
 - ▶ "Exclude ferries"
Ferries are avoided as far as possible.

To exit the menu:

Select the  arrow and press the controller.

The route criteria can also be changed in the arrow or map view:

 Select the corresponding symbol and press the controller.

Wordmatch principle

The wordmatch principle makes the input of place names and streets easier. It compares your destination inputs continuously with the data stored on the navigation DVD, and reacts even if slight discrepancies are found. This has the following advantages for you:

- ▷ You can also input place names in a form which differs from the official version, provided that you use a form that is familiar in another country or language.

Example:

If you are using the German navigation DVD, instead of the German name "München" you can enter the English equivalent "Munich" or the Italian equivalent "Monaco".

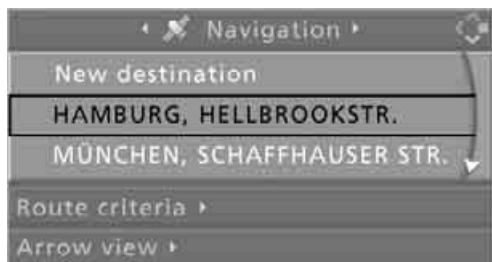
- ▷ When entering place names or streets, the system completes the name automatically as soon as it has been identified beyond doubt.
- ▷ The system only accepts name entries beginning with letters that are stored on the navigation DVD. This makes it impossible for an incorrect name or unknown addresses to be accepted.

Route guidance

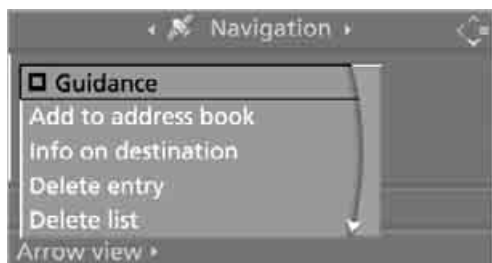
Starting route guidance

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
2. Turn the controller to select the destination or destinations list and press the controller or enter a new destination, see page 134.




3. Select "Guidance" and press the controller.



Once the route has been calculated, you are guided by means of arrows on the control display.

With the Professional navigation system, an optional map view is available.


Route guidance can also be started from the arrow or the map view:

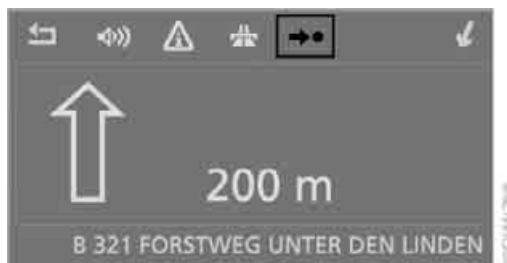
Select the  symbol and press the controller.

During route guidance, you can operate other equipment items at any time via iDrive. If you need to make a turn, you will be alerted in good time by means of spoken instructions and direction arrows in the display.


Ending/Resuming route guidance

In the arrow or map view

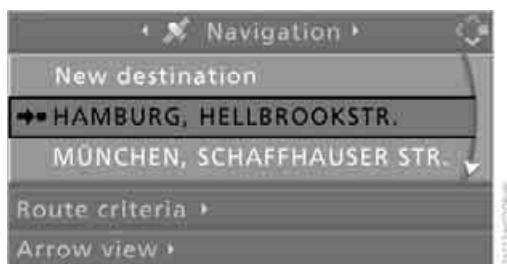
Select the  symbol and press the controller.



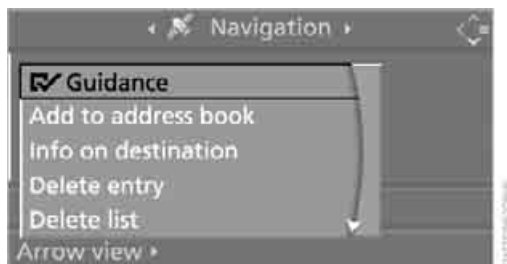
In the destinations list

 This symbol identifies the current destination.

1. Select the current destination and press the controller.



2. Select "Guidance" and press the controller.



If you did not reach your destination before the end of your last journey, the following query will


appear at the start of the next journey:
"Continue guidance?".

Route guidance starts automatically after a short while.

To start route guidance immediately:
Select "Yes" and press the controller.

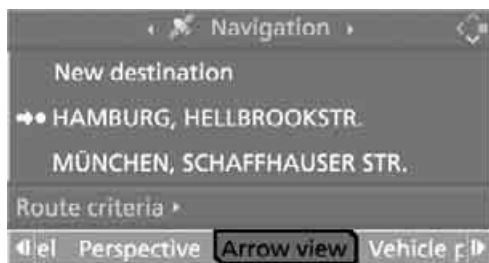
Displaying the route

Various modes are available for displaying the course of the route during route guidance, depending on specification.

 From another menu, you can switch directly to the screen last shown, see Comfort menu item selection, page 16. ◀

Displaying arrow view

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Arrow view" is selected and press the controller.



The arrow view is displayed.



- 1 Switching spoken instructions on/off
- 2 Calling up traffic information manually

- 3 Selecting route criteria
- 4 Starting/ending guidance
- 5 Arrow to destination as the crow flies
- 6 Distance to the next change of direction
- 7 Car's position
- 8 Direction of travel
 - ▷ Outline of an arrow:
Route guidance on the calculated route
 - ▷ Solid arrow:
Arrow points to the calculated route as the crow flies if the car is in an area not recorded on the navigation DVD, e.g. in a multi-storey car park.
Business navigation system:
Arrow points to the destination as the crow flies if the navigation DVD has been ejected and the route could not be calculated.

Depending on your car's equipment version, the expected time of arrival and the distance to the destination will be displayed in the top or bottom line of the control display.

The arrows appear in a different fashion before a change of direction.



- 1 Street name for change of direction
- 2 Distance to change of direction
- 3 Change of direction

To exit the menu:

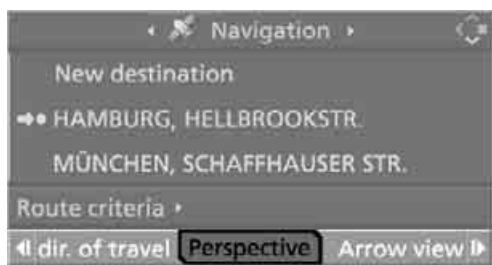
Select the  arrow and press the controller.

Displaying map view

Professional navigation system:

You can have the car's position shown on a map. After starting route guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired map view is selected:
 - ▷ "Map north-oriented"
 - ▷ "Map, indicating dir. of travel"
 - ▷ "Perspective"



3. Press the controller.



- 1 Switching spoken instructions on/off
- 2 Starting/ending guidance
- 3 Selecting the destination via map
- 4 Displaying/hiding information last selected, see Selecting the destination via Information, page 140
- 5 Changing map view
 - ▷ "Map north-oriented"
 - ▷ "Map, indicating dir. of travel"
 - ▷ "Perspective"
- 6 Altering route criteria

- 7 Calling up traffic information manually

- 8 Arrow to destination as the crow flies

The estimated time of arrival and the distance from the destination are displayed on the bottom line of the control display.

To exit the menu:

Select the arrow and press the controller.

If the scale is smaller than 500 km or 250 miles, you can choose whether to align the map pointing towards north, in the direction of travel, or in perspective. At scales from 500 km or 250 miles upward, the map is always displayed pointing towards north.

Changing map view



Select the corresponding symbol and press the controller.

The next map view is displayed.

Changing the scale

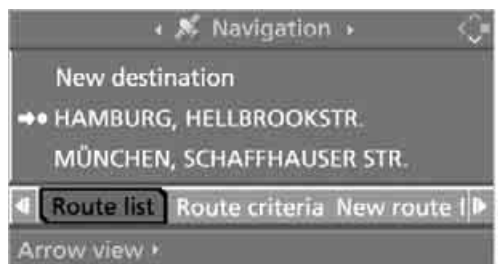
Turn the controller to alter the scale.

Displaying roads and places along the route

You can have the roads and towns along the route displayed during route guidance.

The distances to be covered along each section of the route are likewise displayed.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route list" is selected and press the controller.



Professional navigation system:
Direction arrows and congestion warnings are also displayed.


To exit the menu:

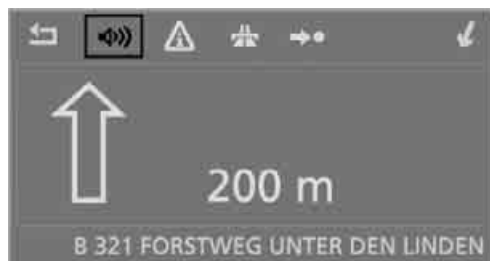
Select the  arrow and press the controller.

Route guidance by spoken instructions


Switching spoken instructions on/off

During route guidance, voice messages can be switched on or off in the arrow view or the map view:

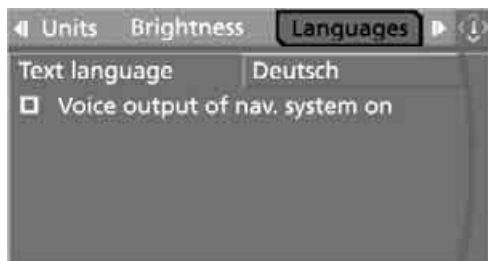
1. In the map view:
Move the controller to the left to change fields.
2. In the arrow and map view:
Turn the controller until the  symbol is selected and press the controller.



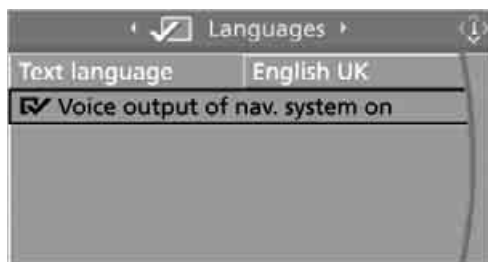
To switch off the spoken instructions at any time:


1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the  menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Display settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller

until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



5. Turn the controller until "Voice output of nav. system on" is selected and press the controller.



 Spoken instructions are switched on.

The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use*.

Repeating and cancelling spoken instructions

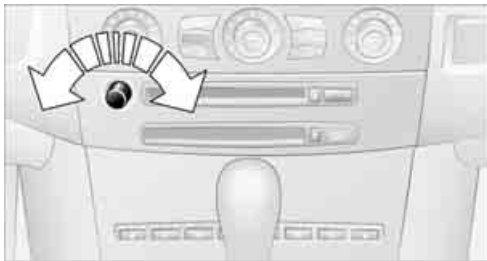
You can also make the following adjustments with the programmable buttons on the steering wheel, see page 51:

- ▷ Having a spoken instruction repeated:
Press the button.
- ▷ Switching spoken instructions on/off:
Press and hold down the button.
- ▷ With the Business navigation system, to switch off voice messages during an announcement:
Press the button.

Adjusting the volume of the spoken instructions

The volume can be adjusted only while a spoken instruction is being issued.

1. Have the last spoken instruction repeated if desired.
2. Turn the knob during the spoken instruction until the desired volume is obtained.



This volume is independent of the volume of the audio and video sources.

The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

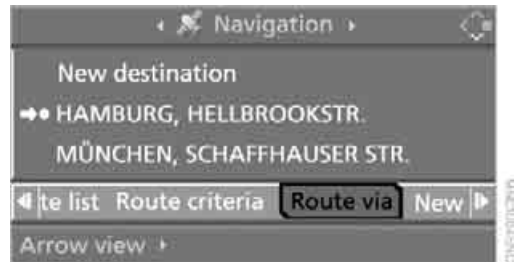
Changing the route

Changing the course of a route

Business navigation system:
During route guidance, you can specify up to two points by which the route should pass, e.g. places or motorway intersections. These points are predetermined by the navigation system and depend on the length of the route, among other factors.


1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until

"Route via" is selected and press the controller.



3. Select a point and press the controller.
4. Select "Calculate" and press the controller. The new route is calculated.

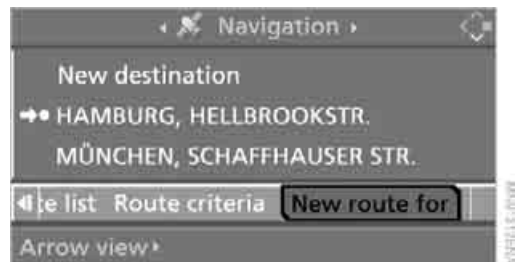
To exit the menu:

Select the  arrow and press the controller.

Avoiding sections of route

You can also instruct the navigation system to deviate from sections of the route during route guidance. You do this by specifying after how many kilometres of the original route you wish to return to it.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "New route for" is selected and press the controller.



A particular section of the route can be avoided:

- ▷ With the Professional navigation system, throughout the entire route
- ▷ With the Business navigation system, for up to 50 km or 50 miles

3. Turn the controller to enter the desired value, then press the controller.
4. Business navigation system:
Select "Calculate" and press the controller.

The route is recalculated.

To exit the menu without altering the route:

Select the  arrow and press the controller.


Traffic information*

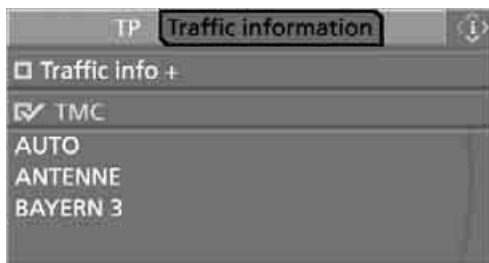
At any time you can have traffic information displayed by radio stations that broadcast traffic situation information: Traffic Message Channel TMC. This traffic information is constantly updated with the aid of measurements from traffic control centres and information from congestion detectors.


The traffic information relevant to the route you are following is displayed automatically during route guidance. It can also be called up manually via iDrive. With the Professional navigation system, the traffic information is displayed in the map view.

Switching traffic information transmission on/off

iDrive concept, see page 14.


1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the  menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Traffic information settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Professional navigation system:
If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Traffic information" is selected and press the controller.
Business navigation system:
If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "TMC" is selected and press the controller.




5. Turn the controller until "TMC" is selected and press the controller.
 Traffic information can be transmitted and displayed.

Selecting TMC stations

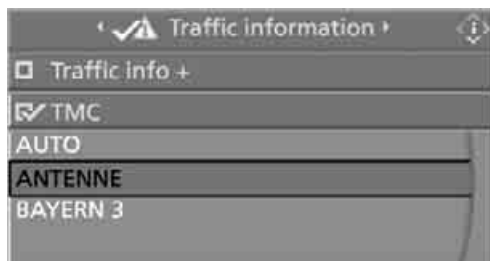
Business navigation system

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the  menu.
3. Select "Traffic information settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "TMC" and press the controller.
5. Select a TMC station and press the controller.
"TMC AUTO": automatic selection of the TMC station with the strongest received signal.

Professional navigation system

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the  menu.
3. Select "Traffic information settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Traffic information" and press the controller.
5. Select a TMC station and press the controller.

"AUTO": automatic selection of the TMC station with the strongest received signal.

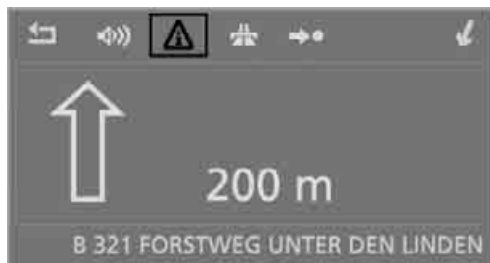


Calling up traffic information manually

During route guidance, traffic information can be switched on or off in the arrow view or the map view:

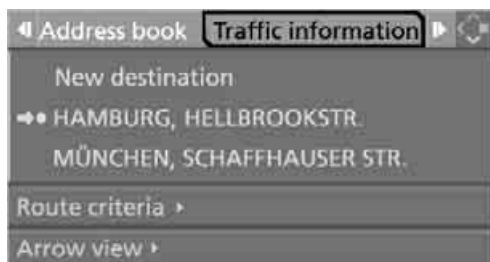
A This symbol will appear inside a red border if traffic information is available for the planned route.

Select the **A** symbol and press the controller.



To call up the traffic information at any time:

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to call up "Navigation".
3. Select "Traffic information" and press the controller.



The control display will show the current traffic information, sorted by distance.

Business navigation system:

During route guidance, traffic information concerning the planned route is shown at the top of the list. It is indicated by a triangle with red border.

Professional navigation system:

During route guidance, traffic information along the planned route will be marked by means of a triangle with a red border.

4. To display detailed traffic information:
Select an entry and press the controller.



To exit the menu:

Select the **←** arrow and press the controller.

Traffic information symbols

- Traffic event at map scale larger than 10 km or 5 miles, arrow points in affected direction of travel
- Several traffic events are at the same location on the map
- Traffic light failure
- Roadworks
- Undefined traffic obstruction
- Transport of hazardous load
- Oncoming vehicle
- Height restriction
- No parking

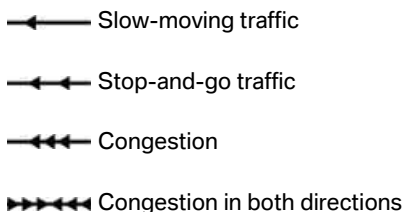


Representation of traffic information in the map view

Professional navigation system:

The traffic information symbols are shown in the map view up to a scale of 200 km or 100 miles.

At scales of up to 10 km or 5 miles, additional information is displayed. The length, direction and severity of traffic congestion are shown by arrows along the route, e.g.:



Along the planned route

Symbol with red border, together with the traffic obstruction symbol.

Away from the planned route

- ▷ Map scale up to 10 km or 5 miles:
Symbol with grey border, together with the traffic obstruction symbol
- ▷ Map scale from 20 km or 10 miles:
Symbol with grey border and an arrow pointing in the appropriate direction

Traffic information during route guidance

If the navigation system receives traffic information and "Dynamic route" is not selected, within approx. 100 km, approx. 50 miles of the traffic obstruction, you are provided with specific information such as the length of the congestion.

The last possible turning to leave the route is displayed to you shortly before you reach it.

This information is still displayed if you have called up another application on the control display.

Avoiding congestion



Professional navigation system:

Select "Plan detour" and press the controller.

The navigation system calculates a new route to avoid the congestion and then takes you back onto the original route.

Business navigation system:

Select "Dynamic route planning" and press the controller.

The navigation system calculates a route that depends on the road type and the nature and length of the traffic congestion. The route may lead through the traffic obstruction or avoid the congestion and then take you back onto the original route.

With the Professional navigation system, you can also have the car's position shown on a map, see page [149](#).

Displaying the car's position*

You can have the car's position displayed even with route guidance switched off.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Vehicle position" is selected and press the controller.




The current position of your BMW is displayed.



If the navigation system is unable to identify a name for your present position, it is displayed as degrees longitude and latitude.

To exit the menu:

Select the  arrow and press the controller.

What to do if ...

What to do if ...

- ▷ a navigation DVD has been inserted but a request to insert the DVD is displayed on the control display?
The navigation DVD is possibly not the correct DVD for the navigation system. Check the DVD's label.
- ▷ you call up your car's current position, but the display is not accurate?
You are in a poor-reception area or in an area not covered by the navigation DVD, or the system is currently calculating your position. Reception will normally be possible outdoors.
- ▷ a destination is not transferred to the route guidance system?
The data for the destination is not available on the navigation DVD currently in use. Choose a destination as close as possible to the original one.
- ▷ a destination without a street is not transferred to the route guidance system?
No city centre can be determined on the navigation DVD for the place specified. Enter any road, or a specific destination such as the station, for the town or city in question, then start route guidance.
- ▷ you wish to input a destination, but the correct letter of the alphabet cannot be selected?
The data for the destination is not available on the navigation DVD currently in use. In this case the system will not let you choose the letters of an address it cannot recognise. Choose a destination as close as possible to the original one.
- ▷ directions cease to be given immediately before junctions during route guidance?
You are driving in an area for which full digital information is not yet available on the navigation DVD. Instead of an arrow indicating a turn, you will see an arrow which indicates the general direction of your planned route. Or you have deviated from the proposed route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route.
- ▷ the navigation system does not respond to your inputs?
If the battery has been disconnected, up to 10 minutes may elapse before the system is fully functional again.





Entertainment

This chapter tells you how to operate the radio, CD and TV and adjust the tone settings for these systems.

On/off and settings

The following audio and video sources share the same controls and adjustment options:

- ▷ Professional radio* or Business radio
- ▷ CD player
- ▷ CD changer*
- ▷ Television, TV*

Controls

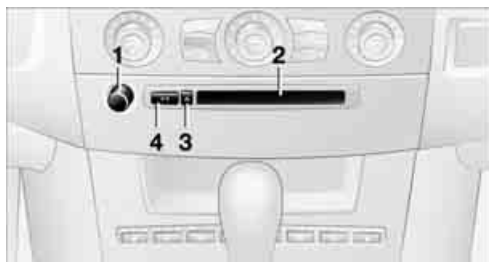
The audio and video sources can be operated via:

- ▷ Buttons next to CD player
- ▷ iDrive
- ▷ Buttons on the steering wheel, see page 9

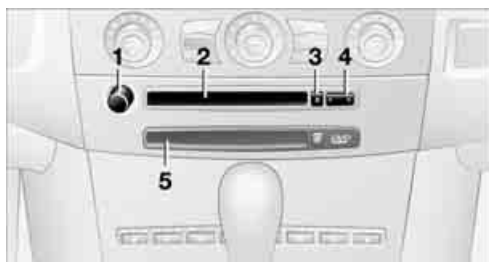
Buttons near the CD player

The layout of the buttons may vary according to specification.

Specification with one disc drive:



Specification with two disc drives:



- 1 Sound output for entertainment systems on/off, volume
 - ▷ Press: to switch on/off.
When switched on, the last radio station tuned, CD track or TV channel is called up.
 - ▷ Turn: to adjust the volume.
- 2 Drive for audio CD
- 3 CD eject
- 4 Station/track search
 - ▷ Changing radio stations.
 - ▷ Selecting tracks for CD player and CD changer.
 - ▷ Changing TV channels.
- 5 Drive for navigation DVD for Professional* navigation system.

Operation via iDrive

iDrive concept, see page 14.


1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Move the controller to the rear to call up "Entertainment".



There is a choice of:

- ▷ "FM" and "AM": radio reception
- ▷ "CD": CD player or CD changer
- ▷ "TV": TV reception
- ▷ "Set": depending on the audio source in question, further settings can be made, e.g. for the radio: switch traffic reports* on/off, update stations with the strongest received

signal, store stations, tone control, sample stations.


 From another menu, you can switch directly to the screen last shown, see Comfort menu item selection page 16. ◀

The selected audio source is saved for the remote control currently in use.

Switching on/off

To switch the sound output for entertainment systems on/off:

Press knob **1** next to the CD player.

 This symbol on the control display indicates that the sound output has been switched off.

In cars equipped with a single disc drive, sound output remains available for approx. 20 minutes after the ignition has been switched off.

All you have to do is switch sound output back on.

Adjusting volume

Turn knob **1** next to the CD player until the desired volume is obtained.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, see page 9.

The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

Adjusting the volume of traffic reports*

Turn knob **1** during a traffic report until the desired volume is obtained.

This volume is retained for subsequent traffic reports. If other audio and video sources are set louder than the traffic reports, the volume of an announcement is raised correspondingly.

Tone control

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass or the speed-dependent volume increase.

The tone settings are applied to all audio sources.

The settings are saved for the remote control currently in use.

Altering tone settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Entertainment settings" and press the controller.



4. Select "Tone" and press the controller.



The tone settings can also be selected if you have called up "Entertainment" in the start menu:

Select "Set" and then "Tone", and press the controller.

Treble and bass

1. Select "Treble / Bass" and press the controller.



2. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Treble" or "Bass".



3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is obtained.

Balance and fader

You can adjust volume distribution in the same way as "Treble / Bass".

- ▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution
- ▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

Speed-dependent volume control

The speed-dependent volume control automatically boosts the volume as the car's speed increases. You can select various stages for the increase in volume.

1. Select "Speed dependent volume" and press the controller.



2. Turn the controller:
The setting is adopted; you can now switch to another field.



Professional LOGIC7 hifi system*

You can select a room acoustics effect that improves the room acoustics in all frequency ranges.

1. Select "LOGIC7 room acoustics" and press the controller.



2. Select "Concert hall" or "Theatre".



3. Press the controller.

LOGIC7 room acoustics are switched on.

To switch off the room acoustics effect:
Select "Off" and press the controller.

LOGIC7 and the LOGIC7 logo are registered trademarks of Lexicon, Inc., a Harman International Group company.

Equaliser*

You can adjust individual audio frequency ranges.

1. Select "Equalizer" and press the controller.



2. Move the controller to the left or right to select the desired frequency range.



3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is obtained.

Resetting the tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default setting.

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Entertainment settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Tone" and press the controller.
5. Select "Reset" and press the controller.



Radio

Your radio is designed for receiving the FM and AM wavebands:

- ▷ FM: stations on the VHF waveband
- ▷ AM: stations on the LW*, MW and SW* wavebands

Listening to the radio



Press the knob if sound output is switched off.

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Move the controller to the rear to call up "Entertainment".
3. If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller to select "FM" or "AM".



4. Press the controller.

Stations are shown on the control display according to a variety of selection criteria, e.g. for Professional* radio "All stations".

If no station is displayed for "Autostore" or the stations displayed can no longer be picked up, update the stations with the strongest reception signal, see page 165.

Changing stations



Turn the controller.

In addition to the stations currently displayed, you can have stations for a different selection criterion displayed.

Professional radio*

You can choose between the following selection criteria:

- ▷ "All stations":
Stations that can currently be received on the "FM" waveband.
- ▷ "Autostore":
The stations with the strongest reception signal on the "AM" waveband.
- ▷ "Memorised stations":
Stations that you have previously memorised, see page 166.

Business radio

You can choose between the following selection criteria:

- ▷ "Autostore":
The stations with the strongest reception signal, see page 165.
- ▷ "Memorised stations":
Stations that you have previously memorised, see page 166.

Changing selection criteria

1. Move the highlighted marker to the second field from the top.
2. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.



Buttons next to CD player

Press button for the corresponding direction.

The next station displayed will be called up.

You can also change the stations with buttons on the steering wheel, see page 9.

Sampling stations, Scan

The stations on the current waveband are automatically sampled in succession.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
"Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
Further menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Scan" and press the controller.



Scan starts.

To stop Scan:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

Scan is interrupted and the selected station is retained.

Buttons next to CD player

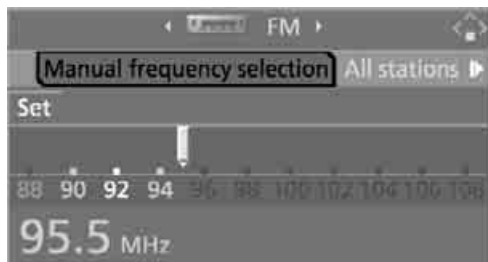
Press and hold down the button for longer in the appropriate direction to start Scan.

To stop Scan, press the button again.

Frequency selection, manual

In "Manual frequency selection" you can select stations that are received in addition to those displayed.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the second field from the top.
3. Select "Manual frequency selection" and press the controller.



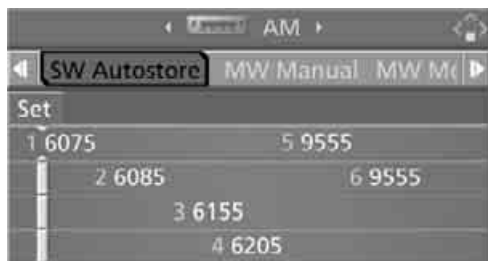
4. Turn the controller to select a particular function.

Updating station with best reception signal

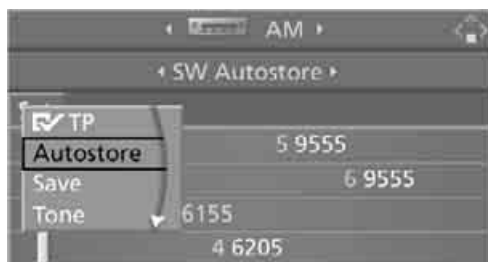
If you move out of the reception range of the stations originally received on a longer journey, you can update the list of stations with the best reception.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the second field from the top.

3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller. "Set" is selected.



4. Press the controller. Further menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.



The display of stations with the best reception is updated. The frequencies of the stations are displayed.

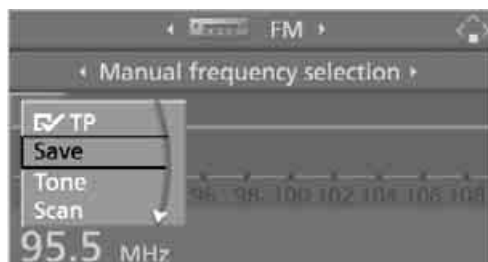
Memorising stations

1. If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller to select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller. "Set" is selected.
2. Move the highlighted marker to the second field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.

3. Select the desired frequency or station. "Set" is selected.



4. Press the controller. Further menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Save" and press the controller.



"Memorised stations" is displayed.

6. Turn the controller until the desired memory location is selected. The number of the memory location is displayed next to the name or frequency of the station.
7. Press the controller. The station is now memorised.



The stations for the last selection criterion are displayed again after a short time.

The stations are saved for the remote control currently in use.

Changing memory location

1. Select "Memorised stations" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired station.
"Set" is selected.
3. Press the controller.
Further menu items are displayed.
4. Select "Save" and press the controller.



5. Turn the controller until the desired memory location is selected.
The number of the memory location is displayed next to the name or frequency of the station.
6. Press the controller.
The station is now memorised.

Radio Data System RDS

RDS broadcasts additional information on the VHF/FM waveband. RDS stations therefore offer the following features:

- ▶ Where a radio station is broadcast on several frequencies, the set automatically switches to whichever frequency offers the best reception.
- ▶ Where reception conditions are good, the names of stations are displayed on the control display. Where reception is poor or in the event of interference, it may take some time before the station names will appear in the display.

Switching RDS on/off*

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
"Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
Further menu items are displayed.
3. Select "RDS" and press the controller.



RDS is switched on.

Automatically sorting stations*

For the selection criterion "All stations", you can program whether the most frequently used stations are displayed first.

1. Select "All stations" and press the controller.
"Set" is selected.
2. Select "Favourites" and press the controller.



The most frequently used stations are displayed first.

Traffic reports*

You can receive traffic information announcements while you are listening to a CD or watching a TV program. In this case, the TP function, Traffic Programme, must be switched on.

On cars with the Professional radio, your radio will receive traffic information announcements even if you are tuned to a station that does not broadcast them. A second station that broadcasts traffic reports can be received in the background.

The following is displayed on the control display, see page 18:

- ▷ "TP":
Traffic information is switched on.
- ▷ "T":
Traffic information is switched off, but the selected station is broadcasting traffic information announcements.
- ▷ No display:
The selected station does not broadcast traffic reports.

The navigation system's spoken instructions are not interrupted by traffic reports.

Switching traffic reports on/off

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller to select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
"Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
Further menu items are displayed.
3. Turn the controller until "TP" is selected and press the controller.



☒ The traffic reports are switched on.

Adjusting volume of traffic information announcements, see page 161.

Selecting stations for traffic reports

On Professional radio*:

1. Call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Traffic information settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "TP" and press the controller.



5. Select a station broadcasting traffic reports and press the controller.
"TP AUTO": automatic selection of the traffic report station with the strongest received signal.



☒ The traffic reports are switched on.

If you choose a traffic report station, broadcasting of traffic reports is automatically switched on.

CD player and CD changer*

Listening to CDs



Specification with two disc drives:
The upper disc drive is intended for audio CDs.


Compressed audio files*

CDs with compressed audio files known as MP3s can be played back on the CD player.

Removing navigation DVD

Specification with one disc drive:
The navigation DVD can be removed during route guidance. All the data required for each route guidance procedure is held in the navigation system's buffer memory. This enables you to listen to audio CDs during route guidance. A message appears on the control display if new data from the navigation DVD is required.

Button next to CD player:

To eject the navigation DVD, press the  button.

The navigation DVD is ejected part way out of the drive.

CD player: starting CD

Insert the CD into the drive with the label side uppermost.

The CD starts to play automatically if sound output is switched on. When playing CDs with compressed audio files, it can take the CD player approx. 1 minute to read in the data, depending on the directory structure.

To start to play a CD if there is already a CD in the drive:

iDrive concept, see page 14.


1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Move the controller to the rear to call up "Entertainment".
3. If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.



4. On cars with CD changers, you may need to switch to the second field from the top and turn the controller to select "CD", then press the controller.
The CD-player starts playing.



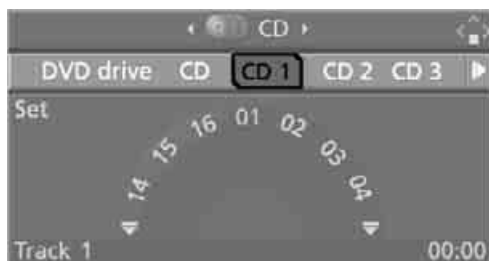
The CD starts to play if sound output is switched on.

Press the  button next to the CD player to eject the CD.

The CD is ejected part way out of the drive.

CD changer: starting a CD

1. Load and insert the CD magazine, see page 173.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
3. Move the controller to the rear to call up "Entertainment".
4. If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlighted marker to the second field from the top. Turn the controller to select the required CD from 1...6 and press the controller.




At the end of the last track, the next CD is selected and played.

If the CDs in the magazine have been changed, the lowest CD starts to play, e.g. CD 1, track 1.

The control display indicates how many CDs there are in the magazine.

Selecting a track

Buttons next to CD player

Press the  button for the appropriate direction as often as necessary until the desired track on the current CD is reached.

The CD starts to play at the start of the track.

The track is displayed on the control display.

You can also change the track with buttons on the steering wheel, see page 9.

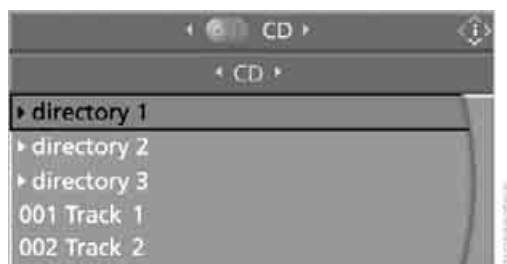
Via iDrive

Turn the controller to select a track.

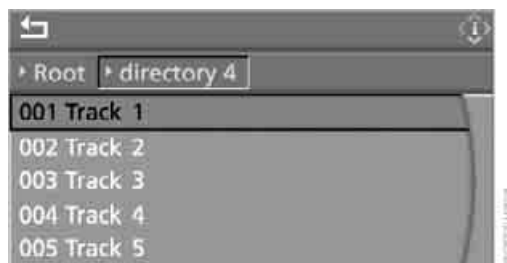


Compressed audio files*

1. Select a directory, if appropriate, and press the controller.



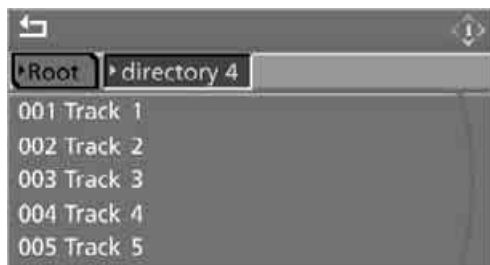
2. Select a track and press the controller.




3. Select "Play" and press the controller.



To change the directory:
Select a directory and press the controller.

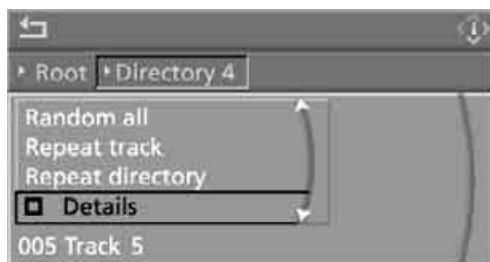


To exit the menu:
Select the  arrow and press the controller.

Displaying information on the track*

With compressed audio files, you can have any saved information about the current track displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



The information is shown for the current track.
The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

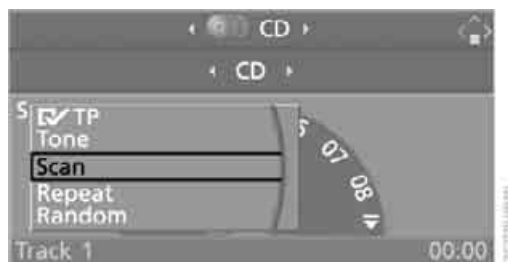
Sampling tracks, Scan

All tracks on the current CD are automatically sampled once in succession.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
Further menu items are displayed.



2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.



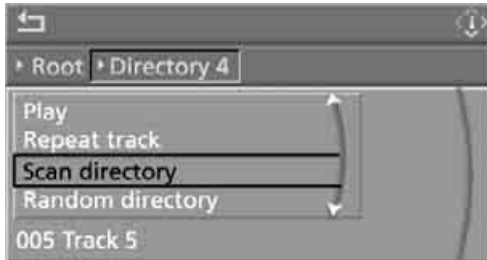
To stop Scan:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

Scan is interrupted and the selected track is retained.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
 - ▷ To sample all the tracks in the current directory, select "Scan directory" and press the controller.
 - ▷ To sample all the tracks on the CD, select "Scan all" and press the controller.



To stop sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan directory" or "Scan all" and press the controller.

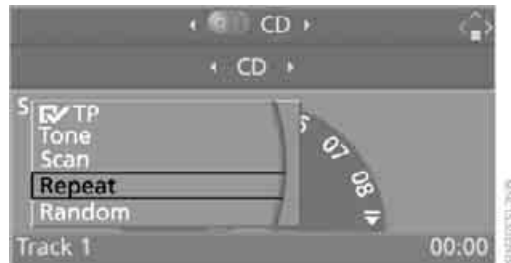
Sampling is interrupted and the selected track is retained.

Repeating tracks

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Further menu items are displayed.



2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.



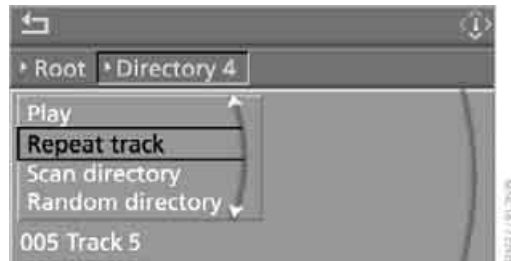
The current track on the CD is repeated.

To stop the repeat function:

1. Press the controller again.
2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
 - ▷ To repeat the chosen track, select "Repeat track" and press the controller.
 - ▷ To repeat all the tracks in the current directory, select "Repeat directory" and press the controller.



To stop the repeat function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" or "Repeat directory" and press the controller.

Random play

The tracks on the current CD are played once each in random order.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Further menu items are displayed.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

To stop random play:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
 - ▶ To play the tracks in the current directory in random order, select "Random directory" and press the controller.
 - ▶ To play all the tracks on the CD in random order, select "Random all" and press the controller.

To stop random play:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random directory" or "Random all" and press the controller.

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons next to CD player:

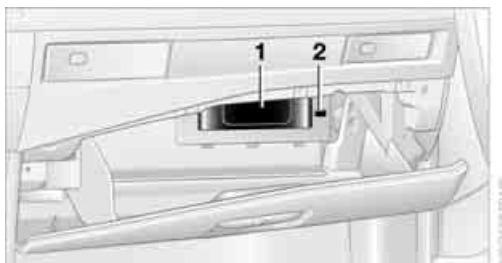
Press and hold the  button for the appropriate direction.

CD magazine

The BMW CD changer for six CDs is installed in the glove box.

Removing the CD magazine

To load or empty it, take the CD magazine **1** out of the CD changer:

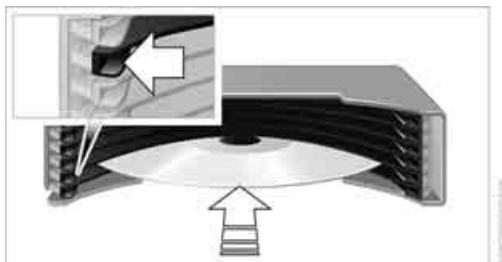


Press button **2**, the CD magazine **1** is ejected.

Wait at least 2 seconds before pushing the magazine back in so that the machine can read in the CDs inserted again.

Loading/emptying the CD magazine

When loading CDs into or removing them from the CD magazine, hold them at the edge and do not touch the reflective signal-sensing area.



To load:

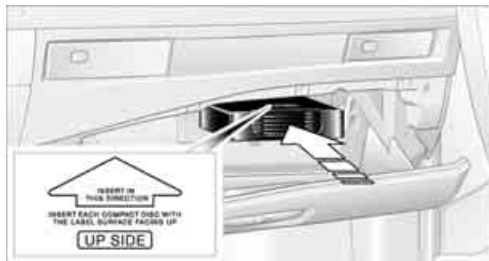
Insert one CD into each slot with the label side uppermost.



To empty:

Pull out the required slot and remove the CD it contains.

Inserting the CD magazine



Insert the CD magazine in fully in the direction of the arrow.

The CD changer automatically reads in the CDs in the changer and is then operational.

Notes

⚠ BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Never use them if the cover is damaged, otherwise there is a risk of serious eye injuries. Do not use CDs/DVDs with adhesive labels that have been affixed subsequently, as these may peel off while in the drive as a result of the temperatures to which these media are exposed during playing, and could damage the system irreparably.

Use only round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 12 cm, approx. 5 in, and do not use CDs/DVDs in conjunction with adapters, e.g. CD singles, otherwise the CDs or the adapter could jam and be impossible to eject.

Do not use combined CD/DVDs, e.g. DVD^{Plus}, otherwise the CD/DVD could jam and be impossible to eject. ◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD players and changers have been optimised for operation in cars. In some instances, they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check if it has been properly inserted.

Humidity

A high level of humidity may cause the laser beam focusing lens to fog over and temporarily prevent the CD/DVD being played.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

Should malfunctions occur only with individual CDs/DVDs, one of the following factors may be the cause.

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

With self-recorded CDs/DVDs, possible causes for output malfunctions are, e.g., an inconsistent data-creation or burning process, or low quality or high age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only write on the upper side of CDs/DVDs using a special marker pen.

Damaged CDs/DVDs

Avoid causing fingerprints and protect against dust, scratches and moisture.

Store CDs/DVDs in a case.

Do not expose CDs/DVDs to temperatures above 50 °C/122 °F, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

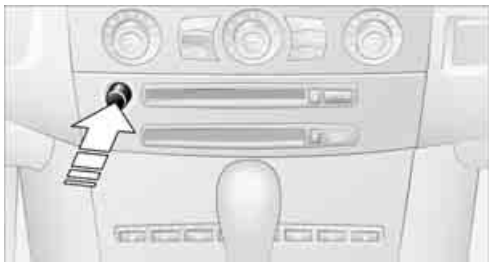
CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often copy-protected by the manufacturer. This could result in CDs/DVDs being impossible to play, or only playable with restrictions.

General care

Whenever necessary, use a commercially available cleaning cloth to wipe the reflective signal side of CDs/DVDs in straight motions from the centre outwards.

Calling up




Press the knob if sound output is switched off. iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Move the controller to the rear to call up "Entertainment".
3. Select "TV" and press the controller.



The set calls up the channel last selected.

 For your safety, the TV picture is only shown at a speed of up to 3 km/h, approx. 2 mph. In certain national-market versions, the TV picture is only visible when the handbrake is applied. However, you can listen to the TV sound while driving. ◀

To change to a different audio source:
Move the controller forward while a channel is being received.



Channels

The TV system is equipped with a digital receiver*. In areas where both analogue and digital television is broadcast, both analogue and digital channels can be received. You can change between these channels.

Changing channel

1. Press the controller.
The channels are displayed on the left-hand side.
2. Select the desired channel and press the controller.



You can also change the channel by turning the controller while the programme is on. You can also change the channel using the buttons on the steering wheel, see page 9.

Updating display of receivable channels

If you have driven out of the transmission range of the channels you were originally receiving, you can update the display of receivable channels.

1. Press the controller during reception.
2. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.

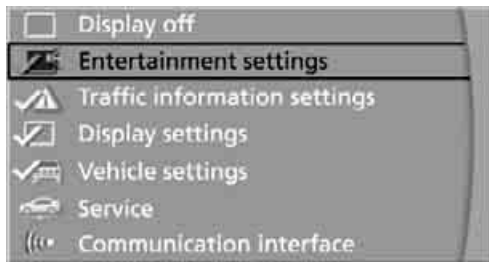


The display of channels with the best reception is updated.

Adjusting the picture*

Adjusting the brightness and contrast

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Entertainment settings" and press the controller.



4. Select "Picture" and press the controller.



5. Select "Brightness" or "Contrast" and press the controller.



6. Turn the controller until the desired setting is obtained.

Resetting

Select "Reset" and press the controller.

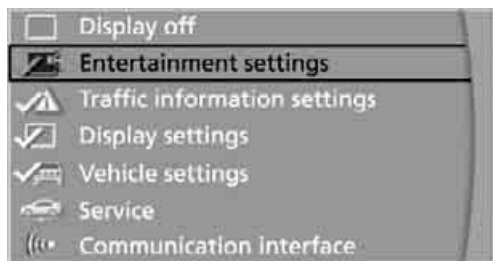


Changing standard

The TV standard is not the same in every country. However, you can adapt your TV receiver to accept all common TV standards.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.

3. Select "Entertainment settings" and press the controller.



4. Select "Picture" and press the controller.



To call up the TV standard, press the controller twice while a programme is on.

5. Select "TV standard" and press the controller.



6. Select the country in which you are currently driving and press the controller.
The display of receivable channels is automatically updated.





Mobility

To assist you in preserving your car's mobility, this section contains important information on operating fluids, wheels and tyres, maintenance routines and minor repairs.

Refuelling

Fuel filler flap



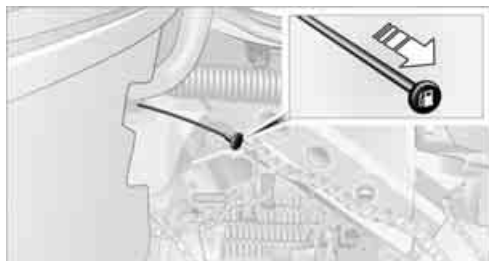
Briefly press the rear edge to open and close.

Manual release

In the event of an electrical fault, you can release the fuel filler flap manually.

Saloon

1. Lift up the floor mat and the cover beneath it in the luggage compartment.
2. Release the quick-release fasteners on the right-hand side trim and take off the side trim.
3. Pull the knob with the fuel pump symbol.



Touring

1. Unhook the luggage strap*, see page 117.
2. Open the right-hand side trim in the load area.

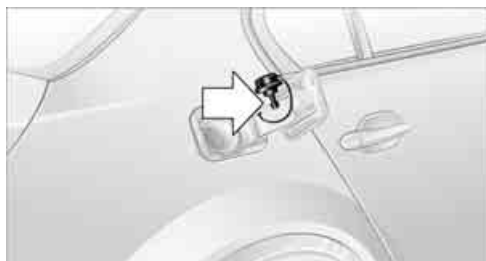
3. Pull the knob with the fuel pump symbol.



Note when refuelling



When handling fuel, comply with the safety regulations displayed by garages and filling stations. ◀



Place the tank cap in the holder on the flap.

When refuelling, insert the filler nozzle fully into the filler neck. If the filler nozzle is raised during refuelling

- ▷ the supply of fuel will be cut off prematurely
- ▷ fuel vapour and fumes will be fed back less effectively

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle cuts out for the first time.

Fuel tank capacity

Approx. 70 litres, approx. 15.4 gal, including a reserve of approx. 8 litres, approx. 1.8 gal.




If the range is below 50 km, approx. 30 miles, refuel the car, otherwise the engine's functions are not assured and damage may occur. ◀

Tank cap


Fastening

Fit the tank cap and turn clockwise until it is clearly heard to click into place.

 Do not crush the tape attached to the cap. A message will appear if the cap is loose or missing. ◀

Fuel grade

Petrol engine

 Never use fuel containing lead, otherwise the catalytic converter will be permanently damaged. ◀


Ultra low sulphur petrol may also be used. Since the engine has a knock control function, it can run on different grades of fuel.

- ▷ The engine of your BMW is rated to run on:
Super Plus/premium plus fuel, octane number 98 RON.
Fill up with fuel of this grade whenever possible, so that the nominal performance and fuel consumption values are achieved.
- ▷ You can also run the engine on:
Premium-grade unleaded fuel, octane number 95 RON.
This fuel is also sold under the following designations:
DIN EN 228 or Eurosuper.
- ▷ The minimum permissible grade is:
Regular-grade unleaded fuel, octane number 91 RON.
If this grade of fuel is being used, the engine may tend to make a knocking sound while being started at high ambient temperatures. This has no influence on the engine's operating life.

National-market versions supplied to run on leaded fuel*

With this specification, in addition to the grades listed above, you can run the engine on leaded fuel. The minimum grade is likewise 91 RON.

Diesel engine


 Do not use rapeseed methyl ester RME, biodiesel or petrol. If the wrong type of fuel has been added, do not start the engine, otherwise you risk causing damage to it. ◀

Contact BMW Service if the wrong type of fuel has been added.

- ▷ Your BMW's engine is rated to run on:
Diesel oil to DIN EN 590 standard.

Winter-grade diesel oil

To ensure that the diesel engine operates reliably during the cold season of the year, it must be run on winter-grade diesel oil, which garages usually sell during the period in question. Fuel filter heating is installed as standard equipment to prevent the fuel solidifying during operation.

 Do not incorporate any additives, including petrol, as these could cause damage to the engine. ◀


Wheels and tyres


Tyre pressures

Information for your safety

The condition of the tyres and maintenance of the correct tyre pressures not only influence tyre life but are also decisive factors in road safety and ride quality.

Checking pressures

 Check and adjust the tyre pressures – including the compact wheel* – on a regular basis, but at least twice a month and before setting out on any long journey. Failure to do so could cause incorrect tyre pressures to affect driving stability or damage the tyres, therefore leading to accidents. ◀

 After correcting tyre pressures, reinitialise the Run Flat Indicator, see page 87. ◀

Tyre pressure values



The tyre pressures for your standard tyres are visible on the driver's door post, with the driver's door open.

Tyre pressures for heavy loads and trailer towing

For trailer towing, the tyre pressures for the higher load in the table apply.

Note tyre size

These tyre pressures apply to sizes of tyre approved by BMW and makes of tyre recommended by BMW; details are available from BMW Service.

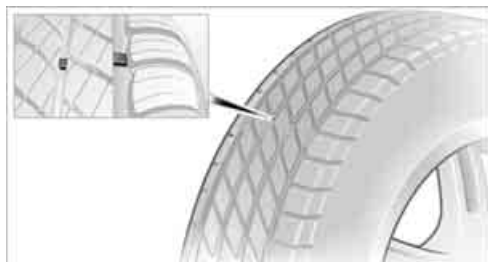
Condition of tyres

Inspect tyres frequently for damage, the presence of foreign bodies, unusual wear and sufficient tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tyre tread depth should not be allowed to drop below 3 mm, approx. 1/8 in. Below a tread depth of 3 mm, approx. 1/8 in, there is an increased risk of aquaplaning when driving on wet roads at fairly high speeds.


Below a tread depth of 4 mm, approx. 3/16 in, winter tyres become noticeably less suitable for winter driving conditions. New tyres should be fitted in the interests of safety.



Wear indicators in the base of the tread groove, see arrow, are distributed around the tyre's circumference; the letters TWI – Tread Wear Indicator – on the tyre's flanks identify tyres that incorporate these wear indicators. Once the tyre tread has worn down to the wear indicators, a tread depth of 1.6 mm, approx. 1/16 in, has been reached.

Tyre damage

Unusual vibration while the car is being driven could indicate a tyre fault or some other defect on your car. This may have been caused e.g. by driving over a kerb or similar. The same applies to any other abnormal road behaviour, such as pulling severely to the right or left.

 In such cases, reduce speed immediately and have the wheels and tyres checked without delay. Proceed with caution to the nearest BMW Service or specialist tyre dealer that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel. Have the car towed there if necessary. Tyre damage represents a risk of serious injury to the car's occupants and to all other road users. ◀

Age of tyres

For a variety of reasons, including the tendency of tyres to become brittle along with increasing age, BMW recommends that new tyres be fitted after not more than 6 years, irrespective of the actual level of wear. This also applies to the tyre on the compact wheel*.

A tyre's date of manufacture is included in the inscription on the tyre:
DOT ... 3705 means that the tyre was manufactured in week 37 of 2005.


Run-flat tyres*




The symbol identifying run-flat tyres is a circle with the letters RSC on the side wall. Run-flat tyres comprise a tyre that is self-supporting within certain limitations, and a special rim. The reinforcement in the side walls ensures that the tyre can continue to be used subject to certain restrictions, even if depressurised.

Continuing a journey with a damaged tyre, see Indication of a flat tyre, page 88.


New wheels and tyres

 Have new wheels and tyres fitted only by BMW Service or by a specialist tyre dealer that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel. If such work is performed inexpertly, it could result in consequential damage and thus constitute a safety risk. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced. ◀

Retreaded tyres

 BMW advises against the use of retreaded tyres, as these could adversely affect the car's safety. Their carcasses may differ in internal construction or have aged sufficiently to limit their durability. ◀

The right wheels and tyres

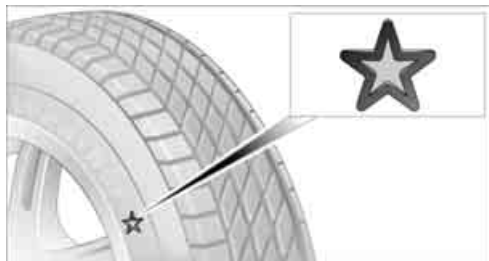
 BMW recommends fitting only wheels and tyres that it has approved for your type of vehicle, otherwise the tyres may e.g. make contact with the vehicle body due to impermissible tolerances, even though they are of an approved size; this could result in a serious accident. BMW is unable to assess the suitability of wheels and tyres it has not approved and cannot therefore guarantee their safety. ◀

Details of the correct wheel and tyre combinations can be obtained from BMW Service.

The correct wheel and tyre combination also has an influence on various systems, which could otherwise malfunction, e.g. ABS, DSC or xDrive.

To maintain the car's good road behaviour, always fit tyres of the same make and tread pattern to all wheels. After a tyre has been damaged, fit the original wheel and tyre combination again as soon as possible.

Recommended makes of tyre




Certain makes of tyre are recommended by BMW for each tyre size. They are marked with a clearly visible BMW designation on the side wall of the tyre.

When properly used, these tyres meet the highest standards in terms of safety and handling characteristics.

Run-flat tyres


When fitting new tyres or changing over from summer to winter tyres and vice-versa, for your own safety you should fit run-flat tyres. Also bear in mind that there is no spare wheel available in the event of a puncture. BMW Service will be pleased to advise you on this.

 For safety reasons, BMW recommends that damaged run-flat tyres be renewed rather than repaired. ◀

Special characteristics of winter tyres

BMW recommends you to fit winter tyres if the car is used for driving in wintry conditions. Although all-season tyres with an M+S marking have better winter characteristics than summer tyres, they do not normally match the performance of winter tyres.

Note the speed limit applicable to these tyres

 Always comply with the speed limit for the winter tyres fitted to your car; failure to do so could result in tyre damage and accidents. ◀

If the car is capable of speeds higher than that permitted for the winter tyres, a label stating the maximum permitted speed for the tyres fitted must be displayed in your field of view. Specialist tyre dealers and BMW Service can supply these labels.

Tyre storage

Store wheels and tyres in a cool, dry and preferably dark place when not in use. Protect tyres against contamination from oil, grease and fuel.


Snow chains*

Only certain fine-link snow chains have been tested by BMW, classified as safe for use and recommended. BMW Service is able to provide the details of these makes.

Fit snow chains in pairs and only to the rear wheels.

When fitting, comply with the snow chain manufacturer's instructions. When snow chains are in use, do not exceed 50 km/h, approx. 30 mph.

Snow chains cannot be fitted on size 245/45 R 17 tyres.

 Do not initialise the Run Flat Indicator if snow chains are fitted, as the instrument might issue an incorrect reading. When driving with snow chains, you may need to activate DTC briefly, see page 84. ◀

In the engine compartment

! Do not work on the car unless you possess the necessary technical knowledge. If you are unfamiliar with the statutory guidelines, have any work on the car performed only by BMW Service or by a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel. If such work is performed inexpertly, it could result in consequential damage and thus constitute a safety risk. ◀

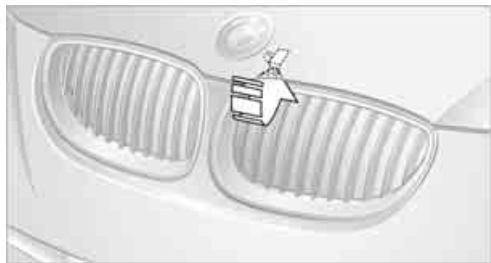
Engine compartment lid

Releasing



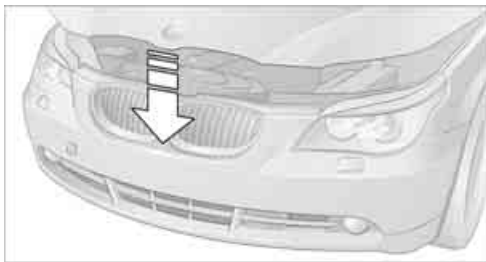
Pull the lever.

Opening



Press the release lever and open the lid.

Closing



Close the engine compartment lid from a height of about 40 cm, approx. 16 in, with some momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

! To avoid injuries, ensure that the closing area of the engine compartment lid is unobstructed.

If you notice during the journey that the engine compartment lid has not been properly closed, stop the car at the earliest possible moment and close it correctly. ◀

Important parts of the engine compartment



- 1 Filler neck for engine oil, see Adding engine oil
- 2 Reservoir for brake fluid, under the microfilter housing
- 3 Jump-starting connection, see page 201
- 4 Diesel engines:
Dipstick for engine oil, see Checking the engine oil level
- 5 Reservoir for washer fluid for headlight cleaning system and windscreen washer, see page 64
- 6 Coolant expansion tank, see page 188. On the diesel engine, the coolant expansion tank is on the opposite side
- 7 Vehicle identification number

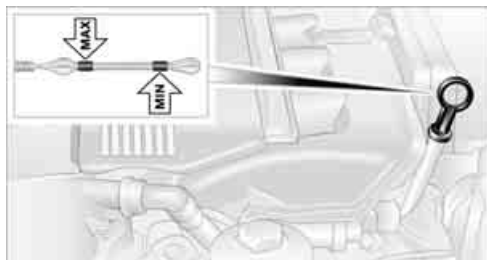
Engine oil

Engine oil consumption depends on driving style and the operating conditions.


Checking the engine oil level on diesel engines

1. Park the car on a level surface with the engine at operating temperature, in other words after driving uninterrupted for at least 10 km, approx. 6 miles.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. After about 5 minutes pull out the dipstick 4 and wipe it dry with a non-linting cloth, paper towel or similar.

4. Carefully push the dipstick fully into its tube, then pull it out again.
The oil level must be between the two marks on the dipstick.



The quantity of oil between the mid-points of the two dipstick marks is approx. 1.5 litres, approx. 2.6 pints.

 Do not add oil beyond the upper dipstick mark, otherwise the engine may be damaged by excess oil. ◀

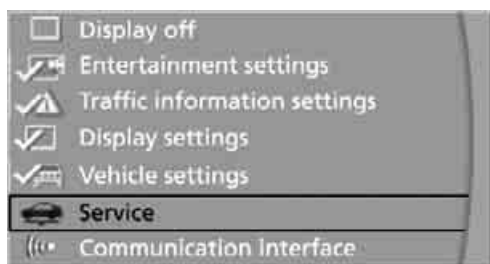
Checking the engine oil level on petrol engines

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic oil level monitoring device.

In order for the oil level to be measured and displayed accurately, the engine must be at operating temperature, i.e. following uninterrupted driving for at least 10 km, approx. 6 miles. You can have the oil level displayed on the control display while you are driving, or while the vehicle is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running.

iDrive concept, see page 14.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to call up the **i** menu.
3. Select "Service" and press the controller.




4. Select "Service requirements" and press the controller.

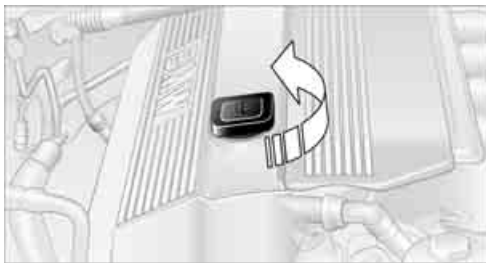


5. Select "Engine oil level" and press the controller. The oil level is displayed.

Possible messages

- ▷ "Engine oil level OK"
- ▷ "No measured value available: Update of engine oil level in process":
Oil level is being measured. This can take about 3 minutes if the car is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running, and about 5 minutes while the car is on the move.
- ▷ "Oil level at the minimum: Add 1 liter engine oil.":
Top up with 1 litre, approx. 2 pints, of engine oil at the next opportunity.
- ▷ "Engine oil level too high":
 Have the car examined immediately, otherwise too much oil could result in engine damage. ◀
- ▷ "Please note: recalculated Service interval for engine oil":
Do not add engine oil. You can continue your journey. Note the newly calculated distance remaining to the next Oil Service, see page 190. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil




Petrol engines


Only add the amount of 1 litre, approx. 2 pints, of oil when you are instructed to do so by a message on the control display.

Diesel engines

Do not add more oil until the level has dropped almost to the lower dipstick mark. When this

level is reached, a message also appears on the control display.

 Top up the oil level within the next 200 km, approx. 120 miles, otherwise the engine may suffer damage. ◀


 Keep all oils, greases etc. out of the reach of children and read and comply with any warning instructions on the containers, to avoid any health risks. ◀


Oil change

Have oil changes performed either by BMW Service or by a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel.

Approved engine oils

The quality of the engine oil is a decisive factor for the correct operation and long life of your car's engine. On the basis of extensive tests, BMW regularly approves specific grades of engine oil.

 BMW Service can provide details of the oils approved by BMW for your car. ◀

 Do not use any oil additives, as these could in certain circumstances result in engine damage. ◀

Alternative oil grades

If exceptionally none of the approved grades of oil is available, you can top up the oil level in between oil changes with other grades of oil. The oil specification on the container must be one of the following:


Petrol engines

- ▷ Preferred: BMW Longlife-01, BMW Longlife-01 FE or BMW Longlife-04
- ▷ Alternatively: BMW Longlife-98 or ACEA A3


Diesel engines


- ▷ Preferred: BMW Longlife-04
- ▷ Alternatively: BMW Longlife-01, BMW Longlife-98 or ACEA A3/B4

Coolant

 Do not open up the cooling system while the engine is hot, otherwise you may scald yourself on the escaping coolant steam. ◀

Coolant is a mixture of water and an additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. BMW Service can provide details of which additives are suitable.

 Use only suitable additives, otherwise the engine could incur damage. As these additives are hazardous to health, observe the notes on the containers. ◀

 When disposing of coolant additives, comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations. ◀

Checking coolant level

1. The engine must be at ambient temperature.
2. Turn the cap on the expansion tank slightly anti-clockwise until it starts to open, then allow the pressure to escape before opening it fully.
3. The coolant level is correct if it is between the minimum and maximum marks, see also diagram next to the filler neck.



4. If necessary, slowly top up to the correct level; do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap to close until it is heard to click.
6. Have the cause of coolant loss rectified as soon as possible.

Brake system

Malfunction

Brake fluid



If the warning lamp lights up red even though the handbrake is released and a message appears on the control display: stop as soon as possible.

The brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low. You may simultaneously notice a marked increase in brake pedal travel. Have the system checked without delay.



If you continue to drive the car, increased brake pedal movement may be necessary and braking distances may be significantly longer. Modify your driving style accordingly. ◀

Brake pads



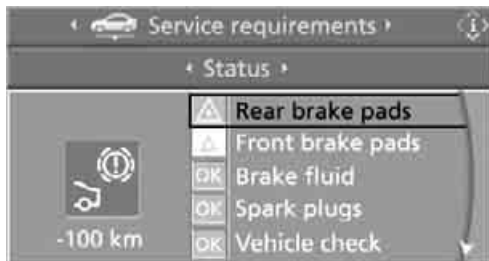
If the warning lamp lights up red even though the handbrake is released and a message appears on the control display: the brake pads have reached the safe limit for pad wear. Have the brake pads changed without delay.



In the interests of your own safety, use only brake pads that BMW has approved for this particular model type. BMW is unable to assess the suitability of brake pads it has not approved and cannot therefore guarantee their safety. ◀

Maintenance

BMW Maintenance System



The BMW Maintenance System contributes towards upholding the roadworthiness and operating reliability of your BMW. It also covers comfort and convenience aspects, such as ensuring that filters for the air in the car's interior are renewed in good time. Its purpose is to optimise maintenance measures with a view to minimising the cost of looking after your car.

If and when you come to sell your BMW, a comprehensive record of servicing will prove a significant benefit.

Condition Based Service CBS

Sensors and advanced algorithms take account of the varying conditions in which your BMW is used. Condition Based Service uses these to determine current and future servicing requirements. The system provides you with an opportunity to tailor the scope of maintenance work to your personal standards, so that your BMW will always be reliably operational.


On the control display, you can have the remaining distances and times for selected maintenance tasks as well as any legally prescribed dates displayed to you individually, see page 74:

- ▷ Engine oil
- ▷ Brakes, separately for front and rear
- ▷ Micro-filter/activated charcoal filter
- ▷ Particulate filter*
- ▷ Brake fluid

- ▷ Spark plugs
- ▷ Vehicle check
- ▷ Statutory vehicle inspections, depending on national requirements


Service data in the remote control

Your car continuously stores such information in the remote control as the car is being driven. Your BMW Service Advisor can read out this data from the remote control, and propose an optimised maintenance approach. Whenever you take your car in for servicing you should therefore hand your BMW Service Advisor the remote control unit that you last used.

 Make sure that the date in the iDrive is always set correctly, see page 80, otherwise the effectiveness of Condition Based Service CBS is not assured. ◀

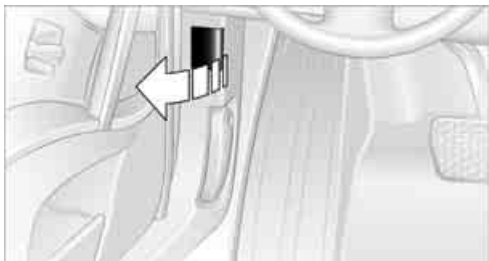
Service Booklet

Further information on the maintenance routines required is provided in the Service Booklet.

 BMW recommends that you have maintenance and repair work carried out by BMW Service.

Make sure that maintenance work is confirmed in the Service Booklet after it has been carried out. These entries are evidence that your BMW has been serviced regularly and correctly. ◀

Socket for on-board diagnosis OBD



Components which have a decisive effect on exhaust emissions can be tested via the OBD socket with a suitable device.

This on-board diagnosis socket is on the driver's side, on the underside of the instrument panel to the left, behind a cover.

Exhaust emissions



If the warning lamp comes on: exhaust emission values have deteriorated.

Have the car checked as soon as possible.

Recycling

The very design of your car incorporates a recycling-friendly concept that extends to both the production methods used and the choice of materials.

BMW recommends that you hand in your car to a salvaging operator approved by the BMW Group at the end of its operating life. In doing this, you will be making an active contribution towards protecting resources and the environment. The regulations concerning the returning of end-of-life vehicles may vary from country to country. Further information is available on the Internet on www.bmw.com or from BMW Service.

General care

Useful hints on care of your BMW are provided in the booklet Looking after your car.

Replacing parts

Toolkit

Saloon



You will find the toolkit in the luggage compartment lid.

Unscrew the wing bolt to open.

Touring



You will find the toolkit behind the left-hand side trim in the load area.

Wiper blades, renewing

Front



1. Fold out the wiper arm and hold it securely.
2. Squeeze together the retaining tabs, simultaneously pushing the wiper blade forward out of the holder.
3. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until you hear it engage.

Rear*



1. Lift off the entire wiper arm and pull off the wiper blade, see arrow.
2. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it audibly engages.

Lights and bulbs

Lights and bulbs are an important aspect of driving safety. They should, therefore, be handled carefully. BMW recommends that any routines that you are not familiar with or that are not described here be entrusted to BMW Service.



Do not touch the glass of a new bulb with the fingers, because even slight amounts of dirt or grease will then be burned into the bulb and reduce its working life. Use a clean tissue, cloth or similar, or hold the bulb by its base. ◀

A box containing spare bulbs is available from BMW Service.

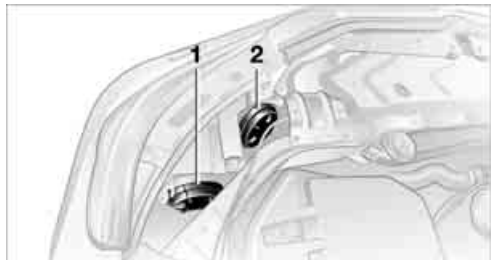


When working on electrical systems, always begin by switching off the consumer in question, as otherwise short-circuits could result. Observe any instructions supplied by the bulb manufacturer, to avoid the risk of injury or damage when changing bulbs. ◀

Please see the booklet Looking after your car for notes on care of the headlights.


Halogen headlights

The picture shows the left side of the engine compartment.



- 1 Cover for low-beam headlight
- 2 Cover for high-beam headlight

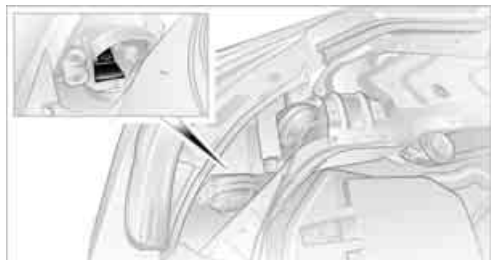
Turn the cover to the left and take it off.

 The H7 bulb is pressurised, so wear goggles and gloves. There is otherwise a risk of injury if the bulb should be damaged. ◀

Low-beam headlights

H7 bulb, 55 Watt

1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and take it off.



2. Pull out the bulb and change it.

High-beam headlights

H7 bulb, 55 Watt

1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and take it off.

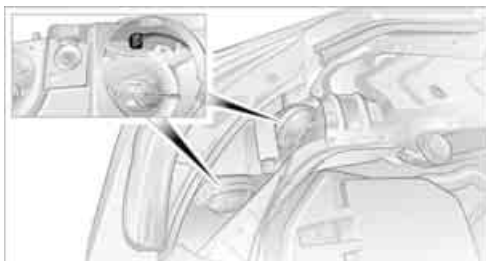


2. Pull out the bulb and change it.

Side and parking lights

5 Watt bulbs, W 5 W


1. Turn the cover for the low-beam or high-beam headlight to the left and take it off.
2. Pull out the bulb holder.



3. Pull out the bulb and change it.

Xenon headlights*

The operating life of these light units is extremely long and the likelihood of failure very low, provided that they are not switched on and off a very great number of times. If a xenon headlight should none the less fail, switch on the fog lights and continue the journey with great care, bearing in mind that visibility will be poorer, provided that local legislation does not prohibit this.

 Have any work on the xenon headlight system, including bulb-changing, performed only by BMW Service or by a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel. Otherwise there is a risk of potentially fatal accidents if work is per-

formed inexpertly, because of the high electrical voltages present. ◀

Side and parking lights

In the event of a fault, please contact BMW Service or a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel.

Front flashing turn indicator

21 Watt bulb, PY 21 W

1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and take it off.

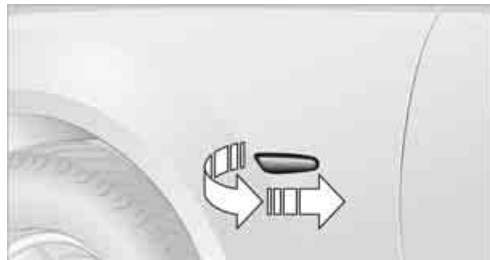


2. Press the bulb in slightly and turn to the left, take out and renew.

Side flashing turn indicators

5 Watt bulb, W 5 W

1. Push the light back at its front edge with the fingertip and swing it out.

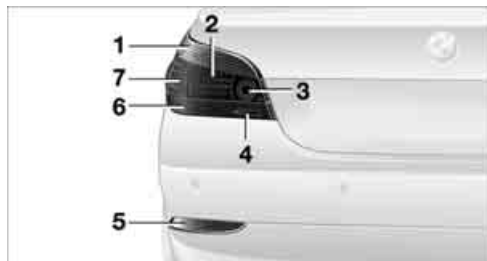


2. Turn the bulb holder to the left and take it off.
3. Pull out the bulb and change it.

Rear lights

Saloon

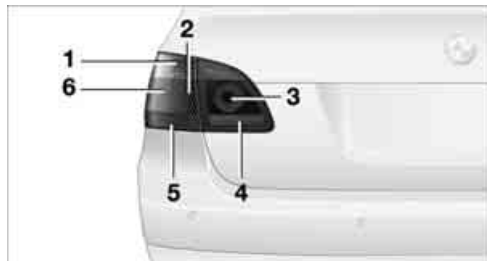
- ▷ Flashing turn indicators: 21 Watt bulb, PY 21 W
- ▷ Reversing lights: 16 Watt bulb, W 16 W
- ▷ Other lights: 21 Watt bulb, P 21 W



- 1 Flashing turn indicators
- 2 Rear light
- 3 Rear light and rear fog light
- 4 Reversing light
- 5 Reflector
- 6 Reflector
- 7 Parking, stop and brake lights

Touring

- ▷ Flashing turn indicators: 21 Watt bulb, PY 21 W
- ▷ Reversing lights and rear fog light: 16 Watt bulb, W 16 W
- ▷ Other lights: 21 Watt bulb, P 21 W



- 1 Flashing turn indicator
- 2 Rear light
- 3 Rear fog light

- 4 Reversing light
- 5 Reflector
- 6 Parking, stop and brake lights

Centre brake light

This light uses LED technology. In the event of a fault, please contact BMW Service or a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel.

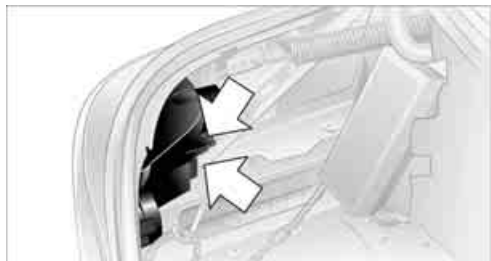
Lights in the side section

Saloon

The picture shows the left side of the luggage compartment.

All bulbs are grouped together in a central bulb holder.

1. Lift up the floor mat.
2. Release the quick-release fasteners on the side trim and pull out the trim.
3. Squeeze together the bulb holder at the top and base, and take it off.



4. Reversing lights:
Pull out the bulb and renew it.
Other lights:
Press the bulb in slightly and turn to the left, take out and renew.

Touring

1. Right-hand side: unhook the luggage strap*, see page 117.
2. Open the side trim.
3. Turn the bulb holder to the left and take it out.

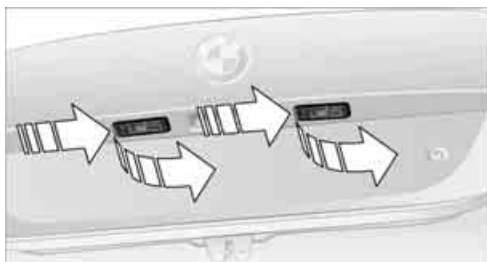
4. Press the bulb in slightly and turn to the left, take out and renew.

Lights in luggage compartment lid

Licence plate lights

5 Watt bulb, C 5 W

1. Insert a screwdriver into the slot and press to the right, see arrows. This releases the light.



2. Take out the light and renew the bulb.

Touring: Rear fog light and reversing lights

In the event of a fault, please contact BMW Service or a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel.

Light-emitting diodes LED

Controls, displays and other equipment items inside your car have light-emitting diodes behind a cover as their light source. These LED resemble conventional lasers and are classified by law as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.



Do not remove the covers or expose the eyes directly to the unfiltered light source for several hours at a time, as this could cause irritation to the retina. ◀

Changing a wheel

⚠ Safety precautions in the event of a puncture or when changing a wheel: park the car as far as possible from moving traffic, on a firm surface. Switch on the hazard warning flashers.

Allow the steering lock to engage with the wheels in the straight-ahead position. Apply the handbrake and engage first gear, reverse or selector lever position P.

All occupants must leave the car and be led to a point where they are not exposed to risk, for example behind a crash barrier at the side of the road.

If necessary, set up a warning triangle* or a flashing warning lamp at a sufficient distance to the rear. Comply with relevant local laws.

Only change wheels on a flat, firm and non-slip surface. On a soft or low-grip surface, such as snow, ice, tiles or similar, there is a risk of the car or the jack sliding sideways.

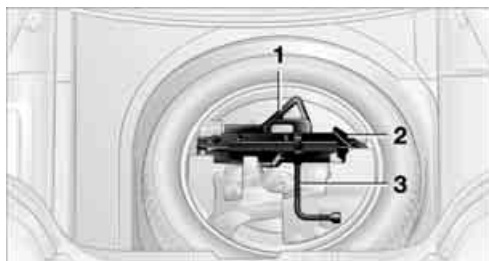
Position the car's jack on a firm surface.

Never place wood blocks or similar under the jack, or the maximum lifting capacity may be exceeded due to the restricted height.

When the car is jacked up, do not lie under it or start the engine, as this could lead to a potentially fatal accident. ◀

What you need

To avoid rattling noises later, please make a note of the positions of the tools when they are removed, and replace them in the same positions later.



- 1 Wheel chock*
- 2 Jack*
- 3 Wheel stud wrench*

The tools are located in the holder beneath the floor mat or floor panel flap.

1. Lift up the floor mat or floor panel flap and the cover beneath it.
2. Take out the required tools.
3. After use, press the tools back down into their holders.

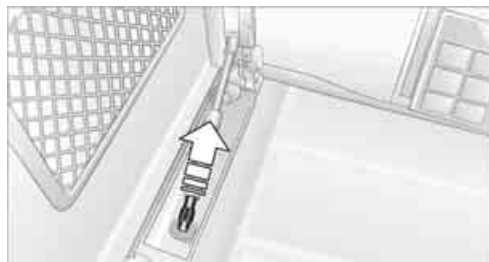
▶ If the car is fitted with run-flat tyres, no tools for changing a wheel are supplied with the car. You can obtain these from BMW Service as accessories. ◀

Touring: removing and installing floor panel flap of storage package

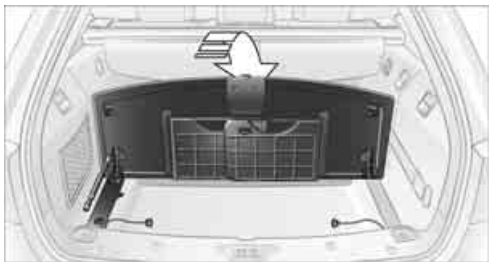
1. Fold up the rear floor panel flap.
2. Disengage both retaining straps at the top.



3. Disengage the gas-filled springs, see arrow, and remove.



4. Fold the floor panel flap forwards to release it, then take it out.

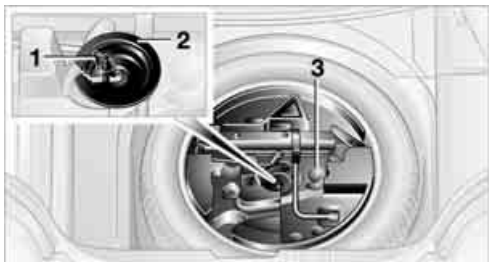


5. Open the front floor panel flap.
6. Swing up the spare wheel cover and engage the hook in the upper frame of the tailgate cutout.
7. Lift out the cross-bar.



When fitting the floor panel flap, follow the reverse procedure and press the hinge covers down.

Compact wheel*



1. Release the wing nut 1.
2. Take out washer 2 to one side.
3. Take out the tool holders 3.
4. Take out the compact wheel.

Preparations for changing a wheel

1. Observe the safety notes further above.
2. Prevent the car rolling away:
Place the wheel chock behind the front wheel on the side opposite to the wheel that is to be changed, or in front of that front wheel if the car is pointing downhill. If the car is on a significant incline, protect it additionally against rolling away.
3. Slacken off the wheel studs by half a turn.
Cars with wheel stud lock* see page 198.

Jacking up the car

1. Position the car jack beneath the jacking point closest to the wheel that needs to be changed, with the jack base vertically beneath the jacking point and resting on the ground across its full surface.



Use the jack only for wheel changing. Do not attempt to raise another type of vehicle or any other load with this jack; this could result in injury or damage. ◀

2. Introduce the head of the jack into the rectangular recess as it is extended, see detail.



3. Continue to turn the crank handle until the wheel you wish to change is lifted clear of the ground.

Fitting the wheel

1. Take out the wheel studs and remove the wheel.
2. Remove heavy dirt deposits from the wheel and hub contact faces and clean the wheel studs.

3. Fit the new wheel or the compact wheel and insert at least two diagonally opposed wheel studs.
If the car is not fitted with alloy wheels of the Genuine BMW type, note that different wheel studs may be needed.
4. Insert and screw up the remaining wheel studs, then tighten them all firmly, working across the hub rather than round it.
5. Lower the car and remove the jack.

After fitting

1. Tighten the studs alternately on opposite sides of the hub.



For safety reasons, have the wheel stud tightening torque checked without delay, using a calibrated torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 120 Nm, approx. 89 lb ft. ◀

2. Proceed in the reverse sequence when storing the wheel and tools.
3. Correct the tyre pressure at the earliest opportunity.



Prevent dirt entering the tyre valves by attaching screw-on dust caps. Dirt in the tyre valve can often lead to a gradual loss of air pressure. ◀

4. Initialise the Run Flat Indicator, see page 87.
5. Renew the damaged tyre as soon as possible and have the new wheel balanced.

Driving with the compact wheel fitted

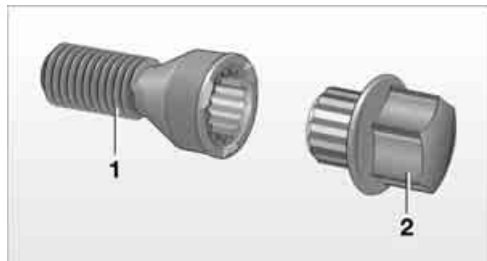
Drive with caution and do not exceed 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.

The car's handling properties, such as track stability during braking, braking distances and the self-steering properties at the limits of handling, may have changed. These effects will be more pronounced in combination with winter tyres.



Only one compact wheel may be fitted at one time. Fit a wheel/tyre combination that matches that of the remaining wheels/tyres at the earliest possible opportunity. ◀

Thiefproof wheel studs*



- 1 Wheel stud for adapter
- 2 Adapter, in the recess beneath the luggage compartment or load area floor

Removing

1. Insert the adapter 2 in the wheel stud.
2. Unscrew wheel stud 1.

After inserting, remove the adapter again.

The code number is embossed on the face of the adapter. Please note this number and keep the details in a safe place in the event of the adapter being lost.

Car battery

Maintenance

The battery needs no routine maintenance whatsoever, in other words the quantity of acid it contains will normally last for the full operating life of the battery in temperate climates. BMW Service will gladly advise you on all matters relating to batteries.

Recharging the battery

Recharge the battery only with the engine stopped, via the connections in the engine compartment. Connections, see Starting with a flat battery on page 201.

Disposal



After changing batteries, have any old batteries disposed of by BMW Service or take them to an official collecting point. Batteries filled with acid should be transported and stored upright. Protect batteries against falling over when in transit. ◀

Power failure

After a temporary power failure, the functions of certain equipment items may be restricted, as they require reinitialising. Individual settings may likewise have been lost and will have to be reprogrammed:

- ▷ Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory
The positions must be reprogrammed, see page 45.
- ▷ Time and date
These values must be updated, see page 79 onwards.
- ▷ Radio
It may be necessary to enter the stations in the memory again, see page 166.
- ▷ Navigation system
Wait until the system starts, see page 156.

Fuses



Do not repair blown fuses or replace them with fuses with different colours or ampere ratings, otherwise overloaded electrical wires can cause a fire in the car. ◀

Saloon

There are spare fuses, plastic tweezers and details of the layout of the fuses in the toolkit compartment, see page 192.

Touring

There are spare fuses and plastic tweezers in the toolkit, see page 192. Details of the layout of the fuses are to be found in the load area, behind the right-hand side trim.

In the glove box

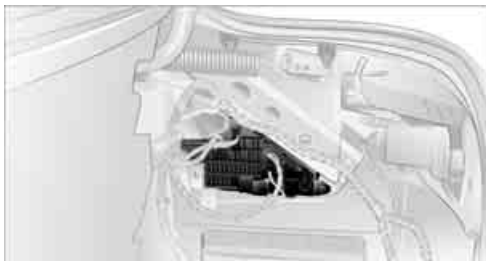
1. Open both quick-release fasteners.



2. Fold the lid forwards or take it off.

Saloon: in the luggage compartment

1. Lift up the floor mat.
2. Open the quick-release fasteners on the right-hand side trim and pull out the trim.



Touring: in the load area



1. Unhook the luggage strap*, see page 117.
2. Open the right-hand side trim.

Mutual aid

Emergency call*

In order to make an emergency call:

- ▷ Business mobile phone preparation package.
- ▷ Radio readiness is switched on.
- ▷ The mobile phone network must be receivable.
- ▷ The emergency call system must be operational.
- ▷ BMW Assist has been activated. To activate BMW Assist, see the separate Operating Instructions.

Although the emergency number may differ from country to country, it is still possible to initiate an emergency call within most GSM networks using the button.

Misuse of the emergency call system is a punishable offence.

If the situation allows, wait in the car until voice contact has been established. You can then provide more precise details of the situation.

On cars where BMW Assist has been enabled, telephone contact is established with the BMW Assist emergency call centre. If the car's current position can be determined, it is transferred to the emergency call centre.

If the LED is flashing but the emergency call centre cannot be heard over the hands-free system, the hands-free system may be malfunctioning. However, the emergency call centre may still be able to hear you speak.

In certain circumstances, an emergency call may be placed automatically immediately after a serious accident. Use of the button does not interfere with an automatic emergency call.



For technical reasons, it may not be possible to make an emergency call in highly adverse conditions. ◀

Making an emergency call

1. Briefly press the cover flap to open it.
The layout of the switches and indicator lamps may vary depending on the car's equipment.



2. Press the button for at least 2 seconds.
If a cancel query appears on the control display, you can interrupt the emergency call within 5 seconds.

The LED in the button comes on. As soon as a telephone connection has been set up with the general emergency call centre, the LED flashes.

Warning triangle*

The warning triangle is stored in the luggage compartment lid/tailgate.

Saloon



Unscrew the wing bolt to open.

Touring



Release two quick-release fasteners and fold down the trim.

First aid pouch*

Certain items in the first aid pouch have a limited useful life. Check the expiry dates of the contents regularly and replace any items that have expired.

Saloon



You will find the first aid pouch in the luggage compartment lid.

Unscrew the wing bolt to open.

Touring



You will find the first aid pouch behind the right-hand side trim in the load area. On cars with a tensioning strap*, pull back the rear end of the tensioning strap and disengage it before opening the trim.

Mobile Service*

The BMW Group's Mobile Service – Emergency Service – is there to assist you round the clock in the event of a breakdown, including at week-ends and on public holidays.

The telephone numbers for Mobile Service in your home country are in the Contact booklet.

In cars equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService, you can establish contact with the BMW Group's Mobile Service for breakdown assistance directly via iDrive, see separate Owner's Handbook.

Starting with a flat battery


If your car's battery is flat, the engine of your BMW can be started with the aid of two jump leads from another vehicle's battery. In the same way, you can help another car to start. Use only leads with fully insulated terminal clamps.




Do not touch any electrically live parts when the engine is running, or a fatal accident may occur. Do not depart from the procedure described below, otherwise personal injury could result or one or both vehicles be damaged. ◀

Preparations

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 Volt and approx. the same capacity in Amp/h. This should be printed on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the donor vehicle.
3. Switch off all consumers in both vehicles.

 The bodies of the two vehicles must not make contact, otherwise there is the risk of a short-circuit. ◀

Connecting the jump leads

 Connect the jump leads in the correct order, so that no sparks which could cause injury occur at the battery. ◀

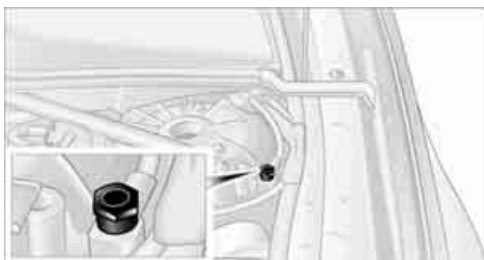
Your BMW has a jump-starting connection in the engine compartment which acts as the battery's positive terminal, see also Engine compartment overview on page 186. The cap is marked with +.

1. Fold open the cover on the BMW's jump-starting connection by pulling the tab.



2. Connect a terminal clamp on the positive/+ lead to the battery's positive terminal or to a jump-starting connection on the donor vehicle.
3. Connect the other terminal clamp to the battery's positive terminal or to a jump-starting connection on the vehicle to be started.
4. Connect a terminal clamp on the negative/- lead to the battery's negative terminal or to the engine or body earth connection on the donor vehicle.

Your BMW has a special nut to act as the body earth or negative terminal.



5. Connect the second terminal clamp to the battery's negative terminal or to a ground/earth connection on the engine or body of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

1. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at a slightly increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the other vehicle in the customary way.
If an initial attempt to start the engine fails, wait several minutes until the flat battery has been recharged to a slightly greater degree.
3. Allow the engines to run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jump leads in the opposite order from that in which they were originally attached.

Check the battery if necessary and have it recharged.



Do not use the spray products sold as starting aids. ◀

Tow-starting, towing away

Using towing eye


The screw-in towing eye must always be carried on the car. It can be screwed into the front or rear end of the BMW.

Saloon:

It is stored in the toolkit in the luggage compartment lid, see page 192.

Touring:

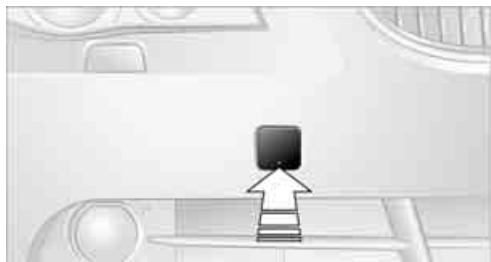
It is stored in the toolkit behind the left-hand side trim in the load area, see page 192.

 Use only the towing eye supplied with the car, and make sure that it is screwed in fully and is tight. Only use the towing eye for towing on roads. Avoid lateral loads on the towing eye, e.g. do not raise the car at the towing eye. Otherwise, the towing eye and the car could be damaged. ◀

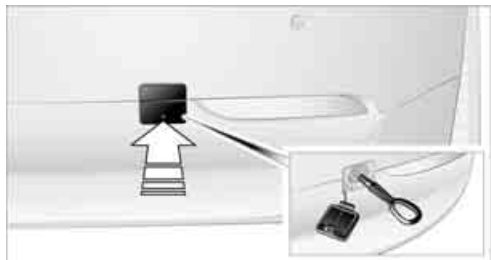
Access to screw thread

Rectangular cover in bumper: press on the arrow symbol on the cover.


Front



Rear



Being towed

 Make sure that the ignition is switched on, see page 56, otherwise low-beam headlights, rear lights, turn indicators and wind-screen wipers will not be available. If the electrical system fails, do not attempt to tow-start or tow away the car. The electrical steering-wheel lock cannot be disengaged and the car is not steerable. Starting with a flat battery see page 201. Servo assistance is not available when the engine is not running. The steering

and brakes will require extra effort to operate. The active steering will not be active and more pronounced steering wheel movements will be necessary. ◀


Switch on the hazard warning flashers, depending on local regulations. If the car's electrical system has failed, the car to be towed must be made identifiable to following vehicles, for instance by placing a notice or the warning triangle in the rear window.

Manual gearbox

Gearshift lever in neutral.

Automatic transmission


Selector lever in position N.

 Do not exceed a towing speed of 70 km/h, approx. 45 mph, and a towing distance of 150 km, approx. 90 miles, otherwise the automatic transmission could be damaged. ◀

Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG


Switch on the ignition and engage selector lever position N.

Towing methods

 Do not raise the car at the towing eye or by body or suspension components, otherwise it could be damaged. ◀


In some countries, it is prohibited to tow another vehicle on public roads by means of a towbar or towrope. Familiarise yourself with the relevant legislation in the country in question.

With towbar

 The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the towed vehicle, otherwise it may be impossible to maintain control. ◀


The towing eyes of both vehicles should be on the same side. If it is impossible to avoid attaching the towbar at an angle, note the following:

- ▷ Towbar clearance may be restricted when cornering.
- ▷ The towbar will generate lateral forces if it is attached offset.

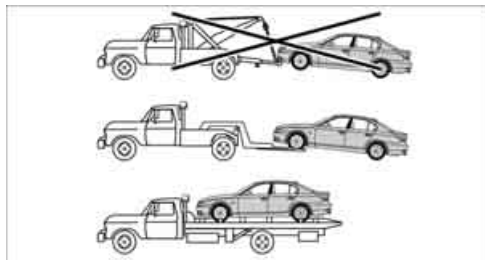
 Only attach the towbar to the towing eyes. Attaching the towbar to other parts of the car can result in damage. ◀

With towrope

Ensure that the towrope is taut when the towing vehicle moves off.


 For towing, use nylon ropes or tapes, as these will help to avoid sudden tensile loads. Only attach the towrope to the towing eyes. Attaching the towrope to other parts of the car can result in damage. ◀

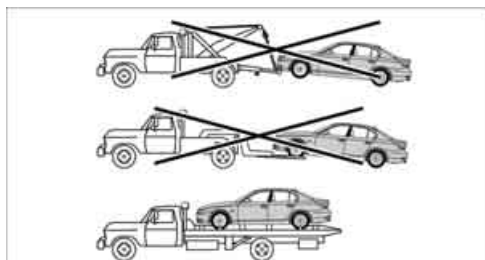
With breakdown truck



Have the BMW transported by a breakdown truck with a hoisting frame or hoisted onto a loading platform.


With breakdown truck 525xi, 530xi, 530xd


 Do not tow away the BMW with just the front or rear axle raised off the ground, otherwise the wheels could lock and the transfer box be damaged. ◀



Always have the BMW hoisted onto a loading platform for transporting.

Tow-starting

 If the electrical system fails, do not attempt to tow-start or tow away the car. The electrical steering-wheel lock cannot be disengaged and the car is not steerable. Starting with a flat battery, see page 201. ◀

 Do not tow-start cars with automatic transmission. Cars equipped with a catalytic converter should only be tow-started if the engine is cold. It is preferable to start the engine using jump leads, see page 201. ◀

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, complying with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, see page 56.
3. Engage 3rd gear. Cars with SMG, see below.
4. Keep the clutch depressed while tow-starting the car, then gradually release the clutch. Press the clutch down fully again as soon as the engine has started.
5. Halt in a suitable place, remove the towbar or towrope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the car checked.

Cars with Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG:

1. Tow-start in selector lever position N.
2. Select the sequential mode. The correct gear is engaged and the clutch operated automatically.

 Do not activate Hill Descent Control HDC on the 525xi, 530xi, 530xd when tow-starting, see page 85. ◀



Reference

This chapter contains the technical data, the short commands for the voice input system and the index, which will help you find specific items of information with ease.

Technical data

Engine data

| | | 523i | 525i/xi | 530i/xi |
|----------------------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Displacement | cc | 2497 | 2497 | 2996 |
| Number of cylinders | | 6 | 6 | 6 |
| Maximum power output | kW/hp | 130/175 | 160/215 | 190/255 |
| at engine speed | rpm | 5800 | 6500 | 6600 |
| Maximum torque | Nm/lb ft | 230/180 | 250/180 | 300/220 |
| at engine speed | rpm | 3500-5000 | 2750-4250 | 2500-4000 |

| | | 540i | 550i |
|----------------------|----------|---------|---------|
| Displacement | cc | 4000 | 4799 |
| Number of cylinders | | 8 | 8 |
| Maximum power output | kW/hp | 225/302 | 270/362 |
| at engine speed | rpm | 6300 | 6300 |
| Maximum torque | Nm/lb ft | 390/290 | 490/360 |
| at engine speed | rpm | 3500 | 3400 |

| | | 520d | 525d | 530d/xd | 535d |
|----------------------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------|
| Displacement | cc | 1995 | 2497 | 2993 | 2993 |
| Number of cylinders | | 4 | 6 | 6 | 6 |
| Maximum power output | kW/hp | 120/161 | 130/175 | 170/227 | 200/268 |
| at engine speed | rpm | 4000 | 4000 | 4000 | 4000 |
| Maximum torque | Nm/lb ft | 340/250 | 400/300 | 500/370 | 560/410 |
| at engine speed | rpm | 2000-2750 | 2000-2750 | 1750-3000 | 2000 |

Fuel consumption, carbon dioxide/CO₂ emissions

| | | 523i/Touring | 523i/Touring | 525i/Touring | 525i/Touring |
|---------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | | Manual | Automatic | Manual | Automatic |
| Urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 12.1/12.1 (23.3/23.3) | 13.4/13.7 (21.1/20.6) | 12.4/12.5 (22.8/22.6) | 13.5/13.5 (20.9/20.9) |
| Extra-urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 6.4/6.7 (44.1/42.1) | 6.9/7.1 (40.9/39.8) | 6.5/6.8 (43.5/41.5) | 7.0/7.2 (40.3/39.2) |
| Total | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 8.5/8.7 (33.2/32.4) | 9.3/9.5 (30.4/29.7) | 8.7/8.9 (32.4/31.7) | 9.4/9.5 (30.1/29.7) |
| CO ₂ emissions | Grams/km (oz/mile) | 205/210 (11.6/11.9) | 224/230 (12.7/13.0) | 210/215 (11.9/12.2) | 227/229 (12.9/13.1) |

| | | 530i/Touring | 530i/Touring | 540i | 540i |
|---------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| | | Manual, SMG | Automatic | Manual, SMG | Automatic |
| Urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 12.6/13.1 (22.4/21.6) | 13.6/13.3 (20.8/21.2) | 16.2 (17.4) | 15.5 (18.2) |
| Extra-urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 6.6/6.9 (42.8/40.9) | 6.8/7.3 (41.5/38.7) | 8.0 (35.3) | 7.5 (37.7) |
| Total | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 8.8/9.2 (32.1/30.7) | 9.3/9.5 (30.4/29.7) | 11.0 (25.7) | 10.4 (27.2) |
| CO ₂ emissions | Grams/km (oz/mile) | 212/222 (11.9/12.6) | 224/230 (12.7/13.1) | 264 (15.0) | 250 (14.5) |

| | | 550i/Touring | 550i/Touring |
|---------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | | Manual, SMG | Automatic |
| Urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 16.4/17.0 (17.2/16.6) | 15.9/16.6 (17.8/17.0) |
| Extra-urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 8.0/8.3 (35.3/34.0) | 7.8/8.2 (36.2/34.4) |
| Total | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 11.1/11.5 (25.4/24.6) | 10.8/11.3 (26.2/25.0) |
| CO ₂ emissions | Grams/km (oz/mile) | 267/276 (15.2/16.0) | 260/272 (14.8/15.4) |

| | | 525xi/Touring | 525xi/Touring | 530xi/Touring | 530xi/Touring |
|---------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | | Manual | Automatic | Manual, SMG | Automatic |
| Urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 13.7/13.7 (20.6/20.6) | 14.8/14.7 (19.1/19.2) | 13.6/14.1 (20.8/20.0) | 14.4/14.6 (19.6/19.3) |
| Extra-urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 7.2/7.7 (39.2/36.7) | 7.7/7.9 (36.7/35.8) | 7.4/7.8 (38.2/36.2) | 7.9/8.1 (35.8/34.9) |
| Total | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 9.6/9.9 (29.4/28.5) | 10.3/10.4 (27.4/27.2) | 9.7/10.1 (29.1/28.0) | 10.3/10.5 (27.4/26.9) |
| CO ₂ emissions | Grams/km (oz/mile) | 232/239 (13.1/13.6) | 249/251 (14.1/14.3) | 234/244 (13.3/13.9) | 249/253 (14.1/14.4) |

| | | 530xd/Touring | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | | Manual, SMG | Automatic |
| Urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 10.2/10.6 (27.7/26.6) | 11.1/11.5 (25.4/24.6) |
| Extra-urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 6.1/6.3 (46.3/44.8) | 6.5/6.8 (43.4/41.5) |
| Total | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 7.6/7.9 (37.2/35.8) | 8.2/8.5 (34.4/33.2) |
| CO ₂ emissions | Grams/km (oz/mile) | 203/211 (11.5/12.0) | 219/227 (12.4/12.9) |

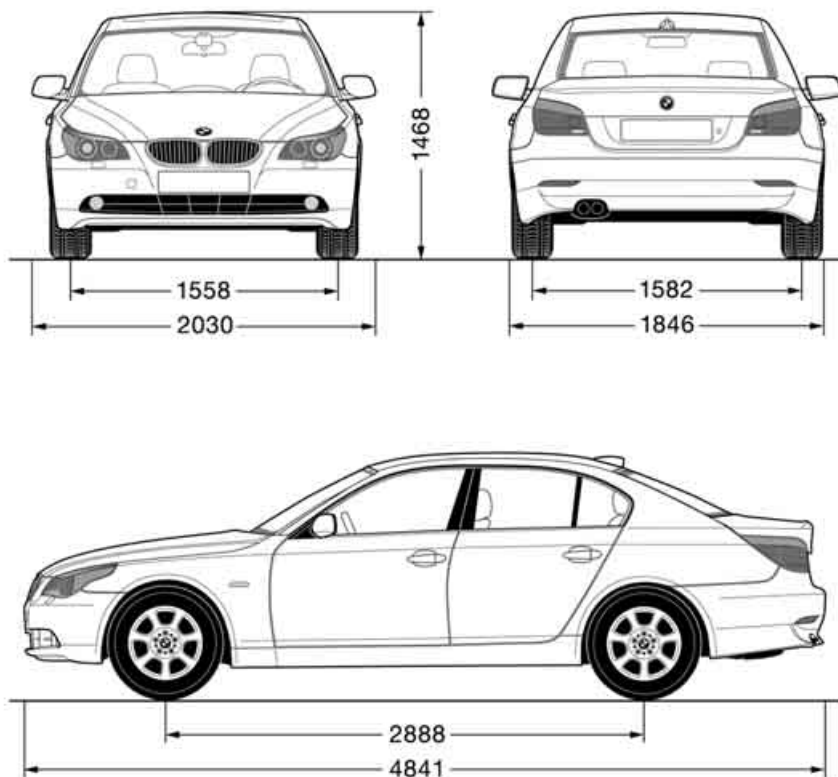
| | | 520d/Touring | 520d/Touring | 525d/Touring | 525d/Touring |
|---------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| | | Manual | Automatic | Manual | Automatic |
| Urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 8.0/8.3 (35.3/34.0) | 9.3/9.6 (30.4/29.4) | 9.3/9.7 (30.4/29.1) | 10.6/10.9 (26.6/25.9) |
| Extra-urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 4.7/4.8 (60.1/58.8) | 5.5/5.6 (51.4/50.4) | 5.3/5.6 (53.3/50.4) | 6.2/6.5 (45.6/43.5) |
| Total | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 5.9/6.1 (47.9/46.3) | 6.9/7.1 (40.9/39.8) | 6.7/7.0 (42.1/40.3) | 7.8/8.0 (36.2/35.3) |
| CO ₂ emissions | Grams/km (oz/mile) | 158/162 (9.0/9.2) | 185/189 (10.5/10.7) | 179/187 (10.1/10.6) | 208/213 (11.8/12.1) |

| | | 530d/Touring | 530d/Touring | 535d/Touring |
|---------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | | Manual | Automatic | Automatic |
| Urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 9.4/9.8 (30.0/28.8) | 10.3/10.6 (27.4/26.6) | 10.9/11.1 (25.9/25.4) |
| Extra-urban | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 5.2/5.4 (54.3/52.3) | 5.9/6.0 (47.9/47.1) | 6.3/6.5 (44.8/43.5) |
| Total | Litres/100 km (mpg) | 6.7/7.0 (42.2/40.4) | 7.5/7.7 (37.7/36.7) | 8.0/8.2 (35.3/34.4) |
| CO ₂ emissions | Grams/km (oz/mile) | 179/187 (10.2/10.6) | 200/205 (11.3/11.6) | 211/216 (12.0/12.3) |

Fuel consumption is determined according to a standard test method, EU Directive 80/1268/EEC. It is not the same as the average fuel consumption in practice, which depends on a great many different factors such as driving style, load, road condition, traffic density and flow, weather, tyre pressures, etc.

Engine power output and road performance data are measured in the conditions laid down by EU Directive 80/1269 EEC or DIN 70020, with the car to standard specification. This standard specifies the permitted tolerances. Optional extras or special accessories may have quite a significant influence on both performance and fuel consumption, as they often affect the car's weight and c_x value, drag coefficient, for instance a roof rack, wider tyres, additional mirrors.

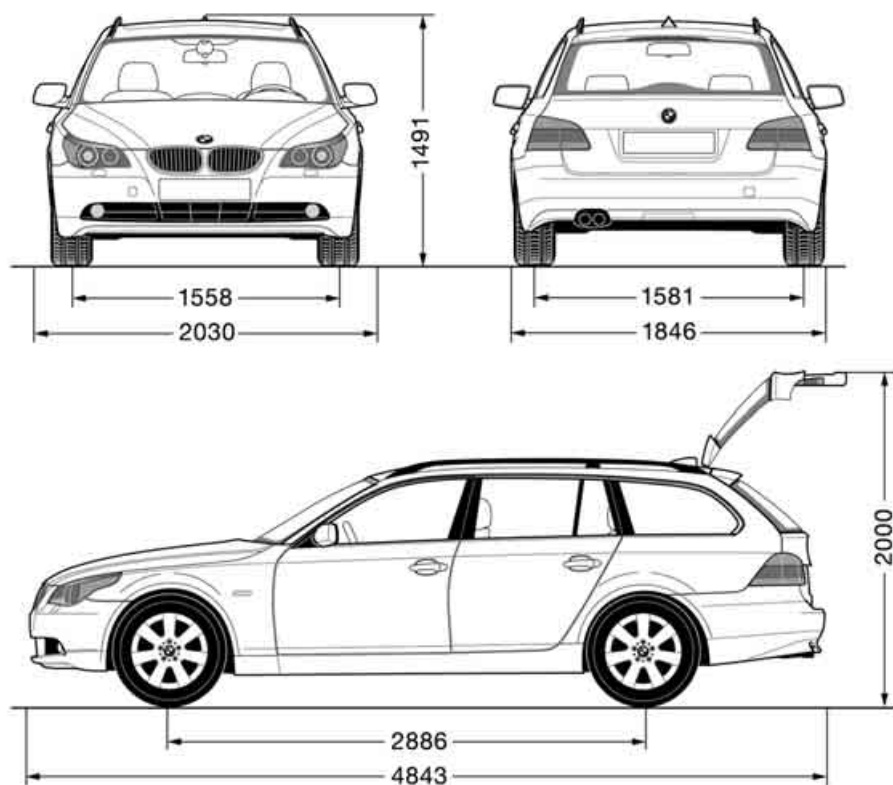
Dimensions



All dimensions in mm.

Car height with xDrive: 1482 mm, approx. 4 ft 10 in

Smallest turning circle Ø: 11.4 m, approx. 37 ft 6 in, with xDrive 11.9 m, approx. 39 ft 1 in



WACHSBERG/AMF

All dimensions in mm. Smallest turning circle Ø: 11.4 m, approx. 37 ft 6 in, with xDrive 11.9 m, approx. 39 ft 1 in

Weights

| Saloon | | 523i | 525i | 530i | 540i | 550i |
|--|-------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg (165 lb) load, tank 90 % full, without optional extras | | | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 1545 (3405) | 1550 (3410) | 1565 (3450) | 1725 (3800) | 1735 (3825) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 1565 (3450) | 1570 (3460) | 1575 (3472) | 1725 (3800) | 1735 (3825) |
| Permitted gross weight | | | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 2010 (4430) | 2035 (4485) | 2050 (4520) | 2210 (4870) | 2220 (4895) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 2030 (4475) | 2055 (4530) | 2060 (4540) | 2210 (4870) | 2220 (4895) |
| Front axle load limit | kg (lb) | 980 (2160) | 980 (2160) | 980 (2160) | 1070 (2360) | 1070 (2360) |
| Rear axle load limit | kg (lb) | 1150 (2535) | 1150 (2535) | 1150 (2535) | 1235 (2720) | 1235 (2720) |
| Roof load | kg (lb) | 100 (220) | | | | |
| Luggage compartment capacity acc. to VDA test | Litres (cu ft) | 520 (18.4) | | | | |

| Saloon | | 525xi | 530xi | 530xd |
|--|-------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg (165 lb) load, tank 90 % full, without optional extras | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 1665 (3670) | 1665 (3670) | 1735 (3825) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 1680 (3700) | 1680 (3700) | 1750 (3855) |
| Permitted gross weight | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 2150 (4740) | 2150 (4740) | 2220 (4890) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 2165 (4770) | 2165 (4770) | 2235 (4930) |
| Front axle load limit | kg (lb) | 1050 (2315) | 1050 (2315) | 1090 (2400) |
| Rear axle load limit | kg (lb) | 1190 (2620) | 1190 (2620) | 1200 (2640) |
| Roof load | kg (lb) | 100 (220) | | |
| Luggage compartment capacity acc. to VDA test | Litres (cu ft) | 520 (18.4) | | |

| Saloon | | 520d | 525d | 530d | 535d |
|--|-------------------|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg (165 lb) load, tank 90 % full, without optional extras | | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 1585 (3490) | 1660 (3660) | 1665 (3670) | - |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 1595 (3520) | 1670 (3680) | 1665 (3670) | 1735 (3820) |
| Permitted gross weight | | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 2050 (4520) | 2145 (4730) | 2150 (4740) | - |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 2060 (4540) | 2155 (4750) | 2150 (4740) | 2220 (4890) |
| Front axle load limit | kg (lb) | 990 (2180) | 1050 (2310) | 1030 (2270) | 1070 (2360) |
| Rear axle load limit | kg (lb) | 1170 (2580) | 1180 (2600) | 1200 (2640) | 1215 (2680) |
| Roof load | kg (lb) | 100 (220) | | | |
| Luggage compartment capacity acc. to VDA test | Litres (cu ft) | 520 (18.4) | | | |
| Touring | | 523i | 525i | 530i | 550i |
| Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg (165 lb) load, tank 90 % full, without optional extras | | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 1635 (3600) | 1640 (3615) | 1655 (3650) | 1825 (4020) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 1655 (3650) | 1660 (3660) | 1665 (3670) | 1825 (4023) |
| Permitted gross weight | | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 2160 (4760) | 2165 (4770) | 2180 (4810) | 2310 (5090) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 2180 (4810) | 2185 (4820) | 2190 (4830) | 2310 (5090) |
| Front axle load limit | kg (lb) | 980 (2160) | 980 (2160) | 980 (2160) | 1070 (2359) |
| Rear axle load limit | kg (lb) | 1280 (2820) | 1280 (2820) | 1280 (2820) | 1300 (2870) |
| Roof load | kg (lb) | 100 (220) | | | |
| Load-area capacity acc. to VDA | Litres (cu ft) | 500-1650 (17.7-58.2) | | | |

| Touring | | 525xi | 530xi | 530xd |
|--|-------------------|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg (165 lb) load, tank 90 % full, without optional extras | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 1760 (3880) | 1760 (3880) | 1830 (4030) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 1775 (3910) | 1775 (3910) | 1845 (4070) |
| Permitted gross weight | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 2285 (5040) | 2285 (5040) | 2335 (5150) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 2300 (5070) | 2300 (5070) | 2350 (5180) |
| Front axle load limit | kg (lb) | 1050 (2315) | 1050 (2315) | 1090 (2400) |
| Rear axle load limit | kg (lb) | 1300 (2870) | 1300 (2870) | 1300 (2870) |
| Roof load | kg (lb) | 100 (220) | | |
| Load-area capacity acc. to VDA | Litres (cu ft) | 500-1650 (17.7-58.2) | | |

| Touring | | 520d | 525d | 530d | 535d |
|--|-------------------|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg (165 lb) load, tank 90 % full, without optional extras | | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 1675 (3690) | 1750 (3860) | 1755 (3870) | - |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 1685 (3710) | 1760 (3880) | 1755 (3870) | 1830 (4030) |
| Permitted gross weight | | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 2200 (4850) | 2275 (5020) | 2280 (5030) | - |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 2210 (4870) | 2285 (5040) | 2280 (5030) | 2315 (5100) |
| Front axle load limit | kg (lb) | 980 (2160) | 1050 (2310) | 1030 (2270) | 1070 (2360) |
| Rear axle load limit | kg (lb) | 1390 (3060) | 1300 (2870) | 1300 (2870) | 1300 (2870) |
| Roof load | kg (lb) | 100 (220) | | | |
| Load-area capacity acc. to VDA | Litres (cu ft) | 500-1650 (17.7-58.2) | | | |

Towing a trailer

| Saloon | | 523i | 525i | 530i | 540i | 550i |
|---|---------|----------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Permitted gross weight | | | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg | 2010 | 2035 | 2050 | 2270 | 2280 |
| | (lb) | (4430) | (4490) | (4519) | (5000) | (5030) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg | 2030 | 2055 | 2060 | 2270 | 2280 |
| | (lb) | (4470) | (4530) | (4540) | (5000) | (5030) |
| Rear axle load limit | kg | 1195 | 1215 | 1215 | 1340 | 1340 |
| | (lb) | (2630) | (2680) | (2680) | (2950) | (2950) |
| Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Note and comply with different values in certain countries. BMW Service will have details of possible increases. | | | | | | |
| ▶ Unbraked | kg | 750 | 750 | 750 | 750 | 750 |
| | (lb) | (1650) | (1650) | (1650) | (1650) | (1650) |
| ▶ braked on slopes of up to 12 % | kg | 1600 | 1800 | 2000 | 2000 | 2000 |
| | (lb) | (3500) | (4000) | (4400) | (4400) | (4400) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg | 1800 | 2000 | 2000 | 2000 | 2000 |
| | (lb) | (4000) | (4400) | (4400) | (4400) | (4400) |
| ▶ braked on slopes of up to 8 % | kg | 1800 | 2000 | 2000 | 2000 | 2000 |
| | (lb) | (4000) | (4400) | (4400) | (4400) | (4400) |
| Trailer nose weight | kg (lb) | 90 (200) | | | | |

| Saloon | | 525xi | 530xi | 530xd |
|----------------------------|------|--------|--------|--------|
| Permitted gross weight | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg | 2210 | 2210 | 2280 |
| | (lb) | (4870) | (4872) | (5030) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg | 2225 | 2225 | 2295 |
| | (lb) | (4900) | (4900) | (5060) |
| Rear axle load limit | kg | 1300 | 1300 | 1310 |
| | (lb) | (2860) | (2860) | (2890) |

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Note and comply with different values in certain countries. BMW Service will have details of possible increases.

| | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---------|------------|------------|------------|
| ▶ Unbraked | kg (lb) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) |
| ▶ braked on slopes of up to 12 % | kg | 1800 | 2000 | 2000 |
| | (lb) | (4000) | (4400) | (4400) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg | 2000 | 2000 | 2000 |
| | (lb) | (4400) | (4400) | (4400) |
| ▶ braked on slopes of up to 8 % | kg | 1800 | 2000 | 2000 |
| | (lb) | (4000) | (4400) | (4400) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg | 2000 | 2000 | 2000 |
| | (lb) | (4400) | (4400) | (4400) |
| Trailer nose weight | kg (lb) | 90 (200) | | |

| Saloon | | 520d | 525d | 530d | 535d |
|----------------------------|------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Permitted gross weight | | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 2110 (4650) | 2145 (4730) | 2210 (4650) | - |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 2120 (4670) | 2155 (4750) | 2210 (4870) | 2220 (4890) |
| Rear axle load limit | kg (lb) | 1250 (2750) | 1245 (2740) | 1310 (2890) | 1275 (2810) |

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Note and comply with different values in certain countries. BMW Service will have details of possible increases.

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| ▶ Unbraked | kg (lb) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) |
| ▶ braked on slopes of up to 12 % | kg (lb) | 1800 (4000) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 1800 (4000) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) |
| ▶ braked on slopes of up to 8 % | kg (lb) | 1800 (4000) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) |
| Trailer nose weight | kg (lb) | 90 (200) | | | |

| Touring | | 523i | 525i | 530i | 550i |
|----------------------------|------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Permitted gross weight | | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 2220 (4890) | 2225 (4910) | 2240 (4900) | 2370 (5220) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 2240 (4940) | 2245 (4950) | 2250 (4960) | 2370 (5220) |
| Rear axle load limit | kg (lb) | 1380 (3040) | 1400 (3090) | 1400 (3090) | 1400 (3090) |

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Note and comply with different values in certain countries. BMW Service will have details of possible increases.

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| ▶ Unbraked | kg (lb) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) |
| ▶ braked on slopes of up to 12 % | kg (lb) | 1600 (3500) | 1800 (4000) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 1800 (4000) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) |
| ▶ braked on slopes of up to 8 % | kg (lb) | 1800 (4000) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) |
| Trailer nose weight | kg (lb) | 90 (200) | | | |

| Touring | | 525xi | 530xi | 530xd |
|---|------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Permitted gross weight | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 2325 (5130) | 2325 (5130) | 2375 (5240) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 2340 (5160) | 2340 (5160) | 2390 (5270) |
| Rear axle load limit | kg (lb) | 1400 (3090) | 1400 (3090) | 1400 (3090) |
| Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Note and comply with different values in certain countries. BMW Service will have details of possible increases. | | | | |
| ▶ Unbraked | kg (lb) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) |
| ▶ braked on slopes of up to 12 % | kg (lb) | 1800 (4000) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) |
| ▶ braked on slopes of up to 8 % | kg (lb) | 1800 (4000) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) |
| Trailer nose weight | kg (lb) | 90 (200) | | |

| Touring | | 520d | 525d | 530d | 535d |
|---|------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Permitted gross weight | | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | kg (lb) | 2260 (4980) | 2335 (5150) | 2340 (5160) | - |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | kg (lb) | 2270 (5000) | 2345 (5170) | 2340 (5160) | 2375 (5240) |
| Rear axle load limit | kg (lb) | 1390 (3060) | 1400 (3090) | 1420 (3130) | 1400 (3090) |
| Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Note and comply with different values in certain countries. BMW Service will have details of possible increases. | | | | | |
| ▶ Unbraked | kg (lb) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) |
| ▶ braked on slopes of up to 12 % | kg (lb) | 1800 (4000) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) |
| ▶ braked on slopes of up to 8 % | kg (lb) | 1800 (4000) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) | 2000 (4400) |
| Trailer nose weight | kg (lb) | 90 (200) | | | |

Performance

| | | 523i/Touring | 525i/Touring | 530i/Touring |
|---|----------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Top speed | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | km/h (mph) | 235/227 (146/141) | 245/240 (152/149) | 250/250 (155/155) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | km/h (mph) | 232/224 (144/139) | 242/237 (150/147) | 250/250 (155/155) |
| Acceleration from | 0 to 100 km/h (0 to 62 mph) | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | s | 8.5/8.8 | 7.5/7.8 | 6.5/6.6 |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | s | 9.3/9.5 | 7.9/8.3 | 6.7/6.9 |
| Acceleration from | 80 to 120 km/h (50 to 75 mph) | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG in 4th gear | s | 9.4/9.7 | 7.9/8.3 | 6.6/6.9 |

| | | 540i | 550i/Touring |
|---|----------------------------------|--------------|----------------------|
| Top speed | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | km/h (mph) | 250 (155) | 250/250 (155/155) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | km/h (mph) | 250 (155) | 250/250 (155/155) |
| Acceleration from | 0 to 100 km/h (0 to 62 mph) | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | s | 6.2 | 5.5/5.6 |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | s | 6.3 | 5.6/5.7 |
| Acceleration from | 80 to 120 km/h (50 to 75 mph) | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG in 4th gear | s | 6.3 | 5.2/5.4 |

| | | 525xi/ Touring | 530xi/ Touring | 530xd/ Touring |
|--|----------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Top speed | | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | km/h (mph) | 237/232 (147/144) | 250/245 (155/152) | 242/235 (150/146) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | km/h (mph) | 232/228 (144/141) | 248/242 (154/150) | 238/233 (148/145) |
| Acceleration from | 0 to 100 km/h (0 to 62 mph) | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG | s | 8.3/8.5 | 6.8/7.0 | 6.6/6.8 |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | s | 8.4/8.6 | 7.1/7.4 | 6.8/7.0 |
| Acceleration from | 80 to 120 km/h (50 to 75 mph) | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission, SMG in 4th gear | s | 8.8/9.3 | 7.2/7.5 | 5.5/5.6 |
| | | 520d/Touring | 525d/Touring | 530d/Touring |
| Top speed | | | | |
| ▶ Manual gearbox | km/h (mph) | 223/218 (139/135) | 230/225 (143/140) | 250/244 (155/152) |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | km/h (mph) | 223/218 (139/135) | 227/222 (141/138) | 248/242 (154/150) |
| Acceleration from | 0 to 100 km/h (0 to 62 mph) | | | |
| ▶ Manual gearbox | s | 8.6/8.9 | 8.1/8.3 | 6.8/6.9 |
| ▶ Automatic transmission | s | 8.7/8.9 | 8.3/8.5 | 6.8/7.0 |
| Acceleration from | 80 to 120 km/h (50 to 75 mph) | | | |
| ▶ Manual transmission in 4th gear | s | 7.0/7.5 | 6.5/6.9 | 5.1/5.1 |
| | | 535d/Touring | | |
| Top speed | km/h (mph) | 250/250 (155/155) | | |
| Acceleration from | 0 to 100 km/h (0 to 62 mph) | s | 6.5/6.6 | |

Filling capacities

| | Litres (Imp. units) | Note |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Fuel tank | approx. 70 (15.4 gal) | Fuel grade: page 181 |
| including a reserve of | approx. 8 (1.8 gal) | |
| Window washer system | | Further details: page 64 |
| ▷ Saloon | approx. 3 (5 pints) | |
| ▷ incl. headlamp cleaning system | approx. 5 (9 pints) | |
| ▷ Touring | approx. 5 (9 pints) | |
| Engine with oil filter renewal | | Long-life oil for petrol or diesel engines. Oil grades: page 188 |
| ▷ 523i, 525i/xi, 530i/xi | 6.5 (11.4 pints) | |
| ▷ 540i, 550i | 8.0 (14.1 pints) | |
| ▷ 520d | 5.75 (10.1 pints) | |
| ▷ 525d | 8.25 (14.5 pints) | |
| ▷ 530d/xd | 7.75 (13.6 pints) | |
| ▷ 535d | 8.5 (15.0 pints) | |

Short commands for the voice input system*

Short commands enable you to perform certain functions directly irrespective of which menu

item is selected. Important short commands for the voice input system are listed below.

Assistance window

| Function | Command |
|---|---|
| Calling up assistance window 18 | ›Assistance window‹ |
| Selecting display in assistance window 19 | ›Assistance window map north orientated‹ , ›Assistance window map direction of travel‹ , ›Assistance window arrow view‹ , ›Assistance window perspective‹ , ›Assistance window vehicle position‹ , ›Assistance window journey computer‹ or ›Assistance window computer‹ |
| Changing the scale in the assistance window 149 | ›Assistance window scale ... kilometres‹ or ›Assistance window scale ... metres‹ |

Communication

| Function | Command |
|---|-------------------------------|
| Further information, see separate Operating Instructions: | |
| Calling up BMW Assist | ›BMW Assist‹ |
| Calling up "BMW Service" | ›BMW Service‹ |
| Calling up "BMW Contact" | ›BMW Contact‹ |
| Calling up "BMW Contact Numbers" | ›BMW Contact Numbers‹ |
| Calling up "Nearest BMW dealer" | ›Nearest BMW dealer‹ |
| Calling up Information Plus | ›Info Service‹ |
| Calling up My Info | ›My Info‹ |
| Calling up BMW Online | ›BMW Online‹ |
| Calling up telephone | ›Telephone‹ |
| Entering PIN | ›Enter PIN‹ |
| Dialling phone number | ›Dial number‹ |
| Displaying phone book | ›A to Z‹ |
| Dialling from the phone book | ›Call ... ‹ or ›Dial name‹ |
| Displaying "Top 8" | ›Top 8‹ |
| Redialling | ›Last number redial‹ |

| Function | Command |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| Displaying "Calls accepted" | ›Calls accepted‹ |
| Displaying "Calls not accepted" | ›Calls not accepted‹ |
| Displaying "Bluetooth" | ›Bluetooth‹ |

Navigation

| Function | Command |
|--|---|
| Calling up navigation 134 | ›Navigation‹ |
| Calling up "Address input" 134 | ›Address input‹ |
| Calling up "New destination" 134 | ›New destination‹ |
| Displaying "Destination input map" 139 | ›Destination input map‹ |
| Displaying destination list 140 | ›Destination list‹ |
| Displaying address book 141 | ›Address book‹ |
| Displaying route criteria 145 | ›Route criteria‹ |
| Starting route guidance 147 | ›Start guidance‹ |
| Exit route guidance 147 | ›Guidance off‹ |
| Displaying arrow view 148 | ›Arrow view‹ |
| Displaying map view 149 | ›Map‹, ›Map north oriented‹, ›Map indicating direction of travel‹ or ›Perspective‹ |
| Changing the scale 149 | ›Scale ... kilometres‹ or ›Scale ... metres‹ |
| Displaying roads or places along the route 149 | ›Route list‹ |
| Switching on spoken instructions 150 | ›Navigation info on‹ |
| Switching off spoken instructions 150 | ›Navigation info off‹ |
| Repeating spoken instructions 150 | ›Repeat navigation info‹ |
| Calling up route 145 , 151 | ›Route‹ |
| Calling up "New route for" 151 | ›New route for‹ |
| Calling up traffic information 152 | ›Traffic information‹ |
| Calling up "TMC" 152 | ›TMC‹ |
| Displaying the car's position 155 | ›Vehicle position‹ |

On-board information

| Function | Command |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| Calling up "On-board Info" 73 | ›On-board info‹ |
| Displaying computer 73 | ›Computer‹ |
| Displaying journey computer 74 | ›Journey computer‹ |
| Calling up limit speed 78 | ›Limit‹ |
| Calling up stopwatch 78 | ›Stopwatch‹ |

Entertainment

| Function | Command |
|--|--|
| Tone control 161 | ›Tone‹ |
| Switching on radio 164 | ›Radio on‹ or ›FM on‹ |
| Calling up "FM" 164 | ›FM menu‹ |
| Calling up "AM" 164 | ›AM menu‹ |
| Calling up "All stations" 164 | ›FM all stations‹ |
| Selecting radio stations 164 | ›Station...‹ or ›Select station‹ |
| Calling up "Memorised stations" 164 | ›FM memorised stations‹, ›SW memorised‹, ›MW memorised‹ or ›LW memorised‹ |
| Selecting a memorised radio station 164 | ›Memorised station‹ |
| Calling up "Manual frequency selection" 165 | ›FM manual frequency selection‹, ›SW manual‹, ›MW manual‹, ›LW manual‹, ›Select frequency‹ or ›Frequency ... Megahertz‹ |
| Calling up radio stations with best reception signal 165 | ›SW autostore‹, ›MW autostore‹ or ›LW autostore‹ |
| Calling up "TP" 168 | ›TP‹ |
| Switching on Traffic Programme 168 | ›Traffic reports on‹ |
| Switching off Traffic Programme 168 | ›Traffic reports off‹ |
| Calling up CD player 169 | ›CD menu‹ |
| Switching on CD player 169 | ›CD‹ |
| Calling up CD changer 170 | ›CD changer menu‹ |
| Switching on CD changer 170 | ›CD changer‹ |
| Selecting CD 170 | ›CD 1...6‹ |

| Function | Command |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| Selecting a music track 170 | ›CD track ...‹ |
| Selecting CD and music tracks 170 | ›CD 1...6 track...‹ |
| Calling up TV 175 | ›Television Menu‹ |
| Switching on TV 175 | ›Television‹ |
| Adjusting the picture 176 | ›Picture‹ |

Climate

| Function | Command |
|--|-----------------------------|
| Adjusting temperature distribution for seat heating 48 | ›Seat-heating distribution‹ |
| Calling up "Centre vent" 101 | ›Centre vent‹ |
| Calling up "Air distribution" 103 | ›Air distribution‹ |
| Calling up "Automatic programs" 102 | ›Automatic programmes‹ |
| Calling up "Independent ventilation" 106 | ›Independent mode‹ |
| Calling up "Direct operation" 106 | ›Direct operation‹ |
| Displaying switch-on times 106 | ›Switch-on times‹ |

i menu

| Function | Command |
|--|---------------------------|
| Calling up "Door locks" 28, 30 | ›Door locks‹ |
| Calling up "Steering wheel buttons" 51 | ›Steering wheel buttons‹ |
| Calling up "Light" 63, 93 | ›Light‹ |
| Calling up "Communication interface" | ›Communication interface‹ |
| Calling up "BMW Service settings" | ›BMW Assist settings‹ |
| Calling up "BMW Service" | ›BMW Service‹ |
| Calling up "Service requirements" 74 | ›Service requirements‹ |
| Calling up "Service" 74 | ›Service‹ |
| Displaying "Check Control messages" 76 | ›Check Control messages‹ |
| Calling up "Display settings" 79 | ›Display settings‹ |
| Calling up "Head-Up Display settings" 91 | ›HUD settings‹ |
| Activating speed limit 78 | ›Limit on‹ |
| Deactivating speed limit 78 | ›Limit off‹ |
| Adjusting brightness of control display 80 | ›Brightness‹ |
| Calling up "Units" 81 | ›Units‹ |
| Calling up "Languages" 81, 150 | ›Language‹ |
| Calling up "Clock" 79 | ›Clock‹ |

| Function | Command |
|---|--------------------------------|
| Calling up "Date" 80 | ›Date‹ |
| Calling up "RPA" 87 | ›RPA‹ |
| Calling up "HDC" 85 | ›HDC‹ |
| Calling up "PDC" 83 | ›PDC‹ |
| Calling up "Traffic information settings" 152 | ›Traffic information settings‹ |
| Calling up "Entertainment settings" 161 | ›Entertainment settings‹ |

From A-Z

Index

"..." Identifies texts on the control display for selecting functions and refers you to the page where these texts are to be found.

A

ABS Anti-lock Brake System **83**

ACC, see Active Cruise Control **66**

Acceleration **220**

Acceleration assistant for Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG **61**

"Accept as destination" **140**

"Accept current speed" **78**

Accessories **5**

Accidents, reporting, see Making an emergency call **200**

Acoustic signal, see Check Control **76**

Activated charcoal filter **105**

Active backrest width adjustment **44**

Active Cruise Control **66**

– indicator lamp **68**

– selecting distance **67**

– warning lamps **69**

– wheel sensor **69**

Active head restraint, front **47**

Active seat **49**

Active seat ventilation **48**

Active steering **88**

– warning lamp **88**

Adapter for spare key **26**

Adaptive brake light, see Two-stage brake lights **89**

Adaptive Head Light **94**

"Address book" in navigation **141**

Address in navigation **134, 138**

– deleting **143**

– entering **134, 138**

– memorising **141**

– memorising the car's position **142**

– selecting **143**

"Address input" **134**

"Add to address book" **141**

"Add to destination list" **137, 138**

Adjusting the confirmation signals for locking and unlocking the car **29**

Adjusting units of measurement on the control display **81**

Adjustments

– on the control display **79**

"After door opens" **46**

"After unlocking" **46**

Air, drying, see Cooling function **100, 104**

Airbags **90**

– deactivating **53**

– indicator lamp for front passenger's airbags **54**

– reactivating **53**

– safe seated position **42**

– warning lamp **90**

Airbag switch **53**

"Air circulation on / off" **51**

"Air distribution" **103**

Air distribution

– adjusting manually **99, 103**

– automatic **99, 102**

Air jets

– see Air vents **98**

Air pressures, checking, see Tyre pressures **182**

Air recirculation, see Recirculated-air mode **100, 104**

Air vents **98**

– see Ventilation **100, 105**

Air volume **99, 103**

Alarm system **34**

– avoiding false alarms **35**

– interior movement detector **35**

– switching off alarm **35**

– switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector **35**

– tilt alarm sensor **35**

"All doors" **28**

Alloy wheels, care, see booklet Looking after your car

All-season tyres, see Winter tyres **184**

"All stations" calling up on radio **164, 167**

All-wheel-drive, see xDrive **85**

Alternative route, see Avoiding congestion **154**

"AM", waveband **160, 164**

Ambient air

– see Automatic Air Recirculation Control AUC **104**

– see Recirculated-air mode **100**

Antifreeze

– coolant **188**

– washer fluid **64**

Anti-lock Brake System ABS **83**

Anti-theft alarm system, see Alarm system **34**

Anti-theft protection, see

Central locking **27**

Approved engine oils **188**

Approved oil grades, see

Approved engine oils **188**

Aquaplaning **123**

Armrest, see Centre armrest
 – front 111
 – rear 114
 Around the centre console 12
 Around the steering wheel 8
 Arrival time
 – see Computer 73
 – see Starting route guidance 147
 "Arrow view" in navigation 148
 Ashtrays
 – front 112
 – rear 113
 Assistance systems, see Driving stability control systems 83
 Assistance window 18
 AUC, see Automatic Air Recirculation Control 104
 Audio 160
 – controls 160
 – switching on/off 160
 – tone control 161
 – volume control 161
 Automatic
 – air distribution 99, 102
 – air volume 102
 – channel memory 176
 – driving lights control 94
 – memorising of stations 165
 – steering wheel adjustment, see Easy entry/exit 51
 – tailgate operation 33
 Automatic air conditioning 98
 – automatic air distribution 99, 102
 – settings via iDrive 101
 – switching off 100, 105
 – with extended range of features 102
 Automatic Air Recirculation Control AUC 104
 Automatic anti-glare control, see High-beam headlights assistant 95
 Automatic car washes 124
 Automatic-dim mirrors 123

Automatic lights
 – see Automatic driving lights control 94
 – see Daytime driving lights 93
 – see Headlight courtesy delay feature 93
 – see High-beam headlights assistant 95
 – see Interior light 97
 "Automatic off" 46
 "Automatic programmes" 103
 Automatic station search 165
 Automatic transmission with Steptronic 61
 – interlock 61
 – kick-down 62
 – selector lever interlock 61, 62
 – shiftlock 61
 – towing away 203
 – tow-starting 204
 – with comfort access 36
 AUTO program for automatic air conditioning system 99, 102
 "Autostore" for radio 164, 166
 "Autostore" for TV 176
 Average fuel consumption 73
 – setting unit of measurement 81
 Average speed, see Computer 72
 Avoiding false alarms 35
 Axle load limits
 – see Trailer towing 217
 – see Weights 214
 Axle loads
 – see Trailer towing 217
 – see Weights 214

B

Backrest contour, see Lumbar support 44
 Backrests, see Seats 43
 Backrest width adjustment 44

"Balance", tone control 162
 Balance, tone control 162
 "Bass", tone control 162
 Bass, tone control 161, 162
 Battery, changing
 – remote control for independent ventilation system/auxiliary heater 108
 Battery, see Car battery 198
 – starting with a flat battery 201
 Battery change
 – remote control with comfort access 37
 Battery disposal
 – car battery 199
 – remote control with comfort access 37
 Being towed 203
 Belts, see Seat belts 47
 Belt tensioner
 – see Airbags 90
 – see Seat belts 47
 Biodiesel, see Diesel engine 181
 Blind
 – roller sun blinds 110
 Blower, see Air volume 99, 103
 BMW Assist, see separate Operating Instructions
 BMW homepage 4
 BMW Internet site 4
 BMW Maintenance System 190
 BMW Online, see separate Operating Instructions
 Bottle holder, see Drinks holders 112
 Brake assist, see Dynamic Brake Control DBC 84
 Brake discs 124
 Brake fluid 189
 – warning lamp 189
 Brake lights
 – bulb changing 194
 – two-stage brake lights 89
 Brake pads 189
 – running-in 122

Brakes

- Anti-lock Brake System ABS [83](#)
- brake fluid [189](#)
- brake fluid level [189](#)
- brake pads [122](#), [189](#)
- Cornering Brake Control CBC [83](#)
- disc brakes [124](#)
- Dynamic Brake Control DBC [84](#)
- electronic brake force distribution [83](#)
- handbrake [58](#)
- running-in [122](#)
- see Safe braking [124](#)
- two-stage brake lights [89](#)
- warning lamp [11](#)
- Brake system [122](#), [189](#)
- warning lamp [11](#), [189](#)
- Breakdown Service, see Mobile Service [201](#)
- "Brightness" [80](#), [176](#)
- Brightness of the control display [80](#)
- "Brightness" on TV [176](#)
- "Building number" in destination input [137](#)
- Bulb changing, see Lights and bulbs [192](#)
- Button for starting engine [56](#)
- Buttons on the steering wheel [9](#)
- Buttons on the steering wheel, see Shift paddles [60](#)

C

- Can holder, see Drinks holders [112](#)
- Capacity
 - of load area [214](#)
 - of luggage compartment [214](#)
- Car
 - battery [198](#)
 - care, see booklet Looking after your car
 - dimensions [212](#)
 - general care [191](#)
 - laying up out of use, see booklet Looking after your car
 - loads [125](#)
 - stopping [58](#)
 - trailer loads [217](#)
 - vehicle identification number [186](#)
 - washing, see booklet Looking after your car
 - weight [214](#)
 - Car's position
 - displaying [155](#)
 - saving [142](#)
 - Car's position, see Displaying the car's position [155](#)
 - Caravan-towing, see Towing a trailer [127](#)
 - Carbon dioxide [209](#)
 - Car care, see booklet Looking after your car
 - Care products, see booklet Looking after your car
 - Car key, see Key/remote control [26](#)
 - Carpets, care, see booklet Looking after your car
 - Car phone
 - installed position, see Centre armrest [111](#)
 - Car radio, see Radio [164](#)
 - Carrying children in safety [53](#)
 - Car telephone
 - see separate Operating Instructions
 - Car wash [124](#)
 - see also booklet Looking after your car
 - see booklet Looking after your car
 - with comfort access [37](#)
 - Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system [122](#)

- CBC, see Cornering Brake Control [83](#)
- CBS, see Condition Based Service [190](#)
- "CD" [160](#), [169](#)
- CD changer [169](#)
- controls [160](#)
- fast forward, reverse [173](#)
- installed position [173](#)
- random play [173](#)
- repeating track [172](#)
- sampling tracks [171](#)
- selecting CDs [170](#)
- selecting tracks [170](#)
- switching on/off [160](#)
- tone control [161](#)
- volume control [161](#)
- CD player [169](#)
- controls [160](#)
- fast forward, reverse [173](#)
- random play [173](#)
- repeating track [172](#)
- sampling tracks [171](#)
- selecting tracks [170](#)
- switching on/off [160](#)
- tone control [161](#)
- volume control [161](#)
- "Central locking" [28](#)
- Central locking [27](#)
- comfort access [35](#)
- from inside [30](#)
- Centre armrest
 - front [111](#)
 - rear [114](#)
- Centre brake light [195](#)
- Centre console [12](#)
- "Centre vent" [101](#)
- Changing a wheel [196](#)
- Changing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs [192](#)
- Changing scale in navigation [149](#)
- CHECK button [77](#)
- Check Control [76](#)
- "Check Control messages" [77](#)
- Child restraint systems [53](#)
- Child safety catches [55](#)
- Child seats [53](#)

Chrome parts, care, see
booklet Looking after your car

Cigarette lighter 113

Cigarette lighter socket 113

"City / Postcode" 136

"City" in destination input 135

Cleaning, see booklet
Looking after your car

Clearance warning, see Park
Distance Control PDC 82

"Climate" 48, 101, 102

Climatic comfort
windscreen 128

Climbing assistance, see
Starting assistance 123

"Clock" 79

Clock 71

– 12 hour/24 hour mode 80

– setting time and date 79

Closing

– from inside 30

– from outside 28

Closing tank cap 181

Clutch, running-in 122

CO₂ emissions 209

Coat hooks 112

Cold start, see Starting the
engine 57

Combined instrument, see
Instrument cluster 10

Comfort/convenience, see
Around the centre
console 12

Comfort access 35

– changing the battery 37

– observing in a car wash 37

"Comfort" for active backrest
width adjustment 44

Comfort operation

– glass roof 28

– windows 28

– windows with comfort
access 36

– with comfort access 36

Comfort starting, see Starting
the engine 57

Compact Disc, see

– CD changer 169

– CD player 169

Compact wheel

– changing 197

– tyre pressure 182

Compartment for remote
control, see Ignition lock 56

Compartments

– in load area 118

Compressed audio files 169

"Computer" 73

Computer 72

– displays on the control
display 73

– hour signal 80

Computer, see iDrive 14

"Concert hall" 163

Condition Based Service
CBS 190

Condition of tyres 182

"Confirmation" 29

Congestion

– avoiding 154

– see Avoiding sections of
route 151

Connecting vacuum cleaner,
see Connecting electrical
appliances 113

Consumption, see Average
fuel consumption 73

Consumption display, see
Fuel gauge 72

Consumption indicator

– computer, average fuel
consumption 73

– energy control 72

Consumption statistics, see
Average fuel
consumption 73

Consumption values, see Fuel
consumption 209

"Continue guidance?" 147

"Contrast" on TV 176

Control centre, see iDrive 14

Control display, see iDrive 14

– brightness adjustment 80

Controller, see iDrive 14

Controls, see Driving area 8

Coolant 188

– checking level 188

– temperature 71

Cooling, maximum 104

Cornering Brake Control
CBC 83

Cornering lights, see Adaptive
Head Light 94

"Country" in destination
input 135

Cross-hairs in navigation 139

Cruise control 64, 66

– Active Cruise Control 66

Cup holder, see Drinks
holders 112

Current fuel consumption 72

Current position

– entering 142

Cylinders, see Engine
data 208

D

Data 208

– dimensions 212

– engine 208

– filling capacities 222

– fuel consumption 209

– performance 220

– technical data 208

– trailer loads 217

– weights 214

"Date" 80

Date 71

– calling up 71

– format 80

– setting 80

"Date format" 80

Daytime driving lights 93

"Daytime running light" 94

DBC, see Dynamic Brake
Control 84

Defrosting windows 100, 103

Defrosting windows and
removing mist 100, 103

Defrost setting 100, 103

"Delete address book" in
navigation 144

- "Delete data" in navigation [144](#)
 - Demisting windows [100](#), [103](#)
 - Destination address
 - deleting [143](#)
 - entering [134](#), [138](#)
 - Destination country in navigation [135](#)
 - Destination in navigation
 - destinations list [140](#)
 - entering [134](#)
 - home address [144](#)
 - manual input [134](#), [138](#)
 - memorising [141](#)
 - selecting from address book [143](#)
 - selecting from map [139](#)
 - selecting via Information [140](#)
 - "Destination input map" [139](#)
 - Destinations list for navigation [140](#)
 - "Details" for audio mode [171](#)
 - Diesel fuel [181](#)
 - Diesel particle filter [123](#)
 - Digital clock [71](#)
 - Dimensions [212](#)
 - Direction instructions, see Spoken instructions [150](#)
 - "Direct operation" [106](#)
 - Displacement, see Engine data [208](#)
 - Display, see iDrive [14](#)
 - Display lighting, see Instrument lighting [97](#)
 - "Display off" [19](#)
 - "Display Offset" [80](#)
 - "Display on / off" [51](#)
 - Displays, see Instrument cluster [10](#)
 - "Display settings" [79](#)
 - Displays in the windscreen, see Head-Up Display [91](#)
 - Disposal
 - car battery [199](#)
 - remote control battery for independent ventilation system/auxiliary heater [108](#)
 - remote control battery with comfort access [37](#)
 - Distance, see Computer [73](#)
 - Distance control, see Active Cruise Control [66](#)
 - Distance from destination, see Computer [73](#)
 - "Distance to dest." [73](#)
 - Divided rear seat back, see Through-loading system [114](#)
 - Door entry lighting [97](#)
 - Door key, see Key/remote control [26](#)
 - Door locking, confirmation signals [29](#)
 - "Door locks" [28](#)
 - Door locks [30](#)
 - Door mirrors [49](#)
 - automatic-dim [123](#)
 - Doors
 - manual operation [30](#)
 - remote control [28](#)
 - Downhill gradients [124](#)
 - Draught-free ventilation [101](#), [105](#)
 - Drawbar load, see Trailer nose weight [217](#)
 - Drinks holders [112](#)
 - Drive mode [60](#)
 - "Driver's door only" [28](#)
 - Driving area [8](#)
 - Driving hints [122](#)
 - Driving lights, see Side lights/low-beam headlights [93](#)
 - Driving lights control, automatic [94](#)
 - Driving on left [124](#)
 - Driving stability control systems [83](#)
 - Dry air, see Cooling function [100](#), [104](#)
 - DSC, see Dynamic Stability Control [84](#)
 - DTC, see Dynamic Traction Control [84](#)
 - Dust caps on tyre valves, see After fitting [198](#)
 - DVD for navigation [132](#)
 - Dynamic Brake Control DBC [84](#)
 - Dynamic Drive [86](#)
 - Dynamic Driving Control [60](#)
 - "Dynamic route" in navigation [145](#)
 - "Dynamic route planning" in navigation [155](#)
 - Dynamic Stability Control DSC [84](#)
 - indicator lamp [11](#), [84](#)
 - Dynamic Traction Control DTC [84](#)
 - activating [85](#)
 - indicator lamp [11](#), [85](#)
- ## E
- Easy entry/exit [51](#)
 - backrest width [44](#)
 - Eject button, see Buttons on CD player [160](#)
 - Electrical fault
 - door lock [30](#)
 - driver's door [30](#)
 - fuel filler flap [180](#)
 - glass roof, electric [39](#)
 - luggage compartment lid [32](#)
 - panorama glass roof [40](#)
 - tailgate [33](#)
 - Electric seats [43](#)
 - Electric steering wheel adjustment [50](#)
 - Electric windows, see Windows [37](#)
 - Electronic Brake Force Distribution [83](#)
 - Electronic oil level check [187](#)
 - Electronic Stabilisation Program ESP, see Dynamic Stability Control DSC [84](#)
 - Emergency call [200](#)

Emergency operation, see
Manual operation

- door lock [30](#)
- driver's door [30](#)
- fuel filler flap [180](#)
- glass roof [39](#)
- luggage compartment lid [32](#)
- panorama glass roof [40](#)
- selector lever interlock, automatic transmission [62](#)
- tailgate [33](#)

Emergency Service, see
Mobile Service [201](#)

Energy-conscious driving, see Energy control [72](#)

Energy control [72](#)

Engine

- data [208](#)
- overheated, see Coolant temperature [71](#)
- running in [122](#)
- speed [208](#)
- starting [57](#)
- starting, comfort access [35](#)
- starting difficulties [57](#)
- stopping [58](#)

Engine compartment [186](#)

Engine compartment lid [185](#)

Engine coolant [188](#)

Engine oil

- adding [187](#)
- additives, see Approved engine oils [188](#)
- alternative oil grades [188](#)
- approved engine oils [188](#)
- checking oil level [186](#)
- dipstick [186](#)
- electronic oil level check [187](#)
- filling capacity [222](#)

Engine oil dipstick [186](#)

"Engine oil level" [187](#)

Engine output, see Engine data [208](#)

Engine overheating, see Coolant temperature [71](#)

Engine speed [208](#)

Engine starting, see Starting the engine [57](#)

"Enter address yourself" [142](#)

Entering a destination by town or city name [135](#)

Entering a destination in navigation [135](#)

Entering a postcode in navigation [136](#)

"Entertainment" [160](#)

"Entertainment settings" [161](#)

"Equalizer", tone control [163](#)

Equalizer, tone control [163](#)

ESP Electronic Stabilisation Program, see Dynamic Stability Control DSC [84](#)

"Exclude ferries" in navigation [145](#)

"Exclude motorways" in navigation [145](#)

"Exclude toll roads" in navigation [145](#)

Excluding motorways in navigation [145](#)

Exhaust system, see Hot exhaust system [122](#)

"Exit assist. window" [19](#)

Eye for tow-starting and towing away, see Towing eye [202](#)

Eyes for lashing, see Securing the load [126](#)

F

"Fader" [162](#)

Fader, tone control [162](#)

Failure message, see Check Control [76](#)

False alarms, avoiding [35](#)

Fasten seat belts, see Seat belts [47](#)

- warning lamp [47](#)

Fastest route in navigation [145](#)

Fast forward

- CD player [173](#)

"Fast route" in navigation [145](#)

Fault

- door lock [30](#)
- fuel filler flap [180](#)
- glass roof [39](#)
- luggage compartment lid [32](#)
- tailgate [33](#)

Fault messages, see Check Control [76](#)

"Favourites", calling up on radio [167](#)

Filling capacities [222](#)

Final drive, running-in [122](#)

First aid pouch [201](#)

Fixture for remote control, see Ignition lock [56](#)

Flashing on locking/unlocking, see Adjusting confirmation signals [29](#)

Flashing turn indicators [62](#)

- bulb changing [194](#)
- indicator lamp [10](#)

Flat tyre

- changing a wheel [196](#)
- compact wheel [197](#)
- run-flat tyres [88](#)

Floods, see Wading [123](#)

"FM" waveband [160](#), [164](#)

Fog lights [96](#)

- indicator lamp [11](#), [96](#)

Folding rear seat back [114](#), [116](#)

Footbrake, see Safe braking [124](#)

Footwell lights [97](#)

For your own safety [5](#)

Four-wheel-drive system, see xDrive [85](#)

Frequency selection, manual [165](#)

Fresh air nozzles, see Air vents [98](#)

Front airbags [90](#)

Front-passenger airbags

- deactivating [53](#)
- deactivating, see Exception for front passenger's seat [53](#)
- reactivating [53](#)

Front seat adjustment [43](#)

Frost protection

- coolant [188](#)
- washer fluid [64](#)

Fuel [181](#)

- additives [181](#)
- consumption values, see Fuel consumption [209](#)
- fuel gauge [72](#)
- grade [181](#)
- see Average fuel consumption [73](#)
- see Fuel grade [181](#)
- tank capacity [222](#)

Fuel filler flap [180](#)

- manual operation [180](#)

Fuel level [72](#)

Fuses [199](#)

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated universal remote control [109](#)

Gearbox

- manual gearbox [58](#)
- overriding selector lever interlock on automatic transmission with Steptronic [62](#)
- Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG [59](#)
- starting assistance [123](#)

Gear changes

- automatic transmission with Steptronic [61](#), [62](#)
- Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG [60](#)

Gear indicator

- automatic transmission with Steptronic [61](#)
- Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG [59](#)

Gear lever

- automatic transmission with Steptronic [61](#)
- manual gearbox [58](#)
- Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG [59](#)

General care [191](#)

General driving hints [122](#)

Glass roof, electric [38](#)

- comfort operation from outside [30](#)

- comfort operation with comfort access [36](#)

- manual adjustment [39](#)

- remote control [28](#)

Glove box [111](#)

- light [111](#)

- rechargeable hand lamp [111](#)

Gong, see Check Control [76](#)

GPS navigation, see

Navigation system [132](#)

Grilles, see

Ventilation [100](#), [105](#)

Gross weight

- see Trailer towing [217](#)

- see Weights [214](#)

Ground lights [97](#)

"Guidance" [147](#)

H

Halogen lights [193](#)

Handbrake [58](#)

- indicator lamp [11](#), [58](#)

Hands-free unit, see

Microphone [12](#)

Hazard warning flashers [13](#)

"HDC" [85](#)

HDC, see Hill Descent

Control [85](#)

"HDC on" [85](#)

"HDC on / off" [51](#)

Head-level airbag [90](#)

Headlight adjustment for opposite rule of the road [124](#)

Headlight beam throw adjustment

- dynamic for xenon headlights [95](#)

- for halogen headlights [94](#)

Headlight courtesy delay feature [93](#)

Headlight flasher [62](#)

Headlights [93](#)

- bulb changing [193](#)

- care, see booklet Looking after your car

- cleaning, see Wiper system [64](#)

- setting, see Rule of the road [124](#)

Head restraint

- remove [46](#)

Head restraints [46](#)

- front head restraints, active [47](#)

- safe seated position [42](#)

Head-Up Display [91](#)

"Head-Up Display Offset" [92](#)

"Head-Up Display settings" [91](#)

Heated

- mirror [49](#)

- rear window [100](#), [103](#)

- seats [48](#)

- steering wheel [51](#)

Heating [98](#)

- interior [98](#)

- outside mirrors [49](#)

- rear window [100](#), [103](#)

- residual heat [104](#)

- seats [48](#)

- steering wheel [51](#)

Heating with the engine off, see Residual heat [104](#)

Heavy loads, see Securing the load [126](#)

Height, see Dimensions [212](#)

Height adjustment

- seats [43](#)

- steering wheel [50](#)

High-beam headlights [95](#)

- bulb changing [193](#)

- headlight flasher [95](#)

- indicator lamp [11](#)

High-beam headlights assistant [95](#)

Hill Descent Control HDC [85](#)

Hints for driving, see Driving hints [122](#)

Holder for drinks [112](#)

Holder for telephone or mobile phone [111](#)

"Home address" in navigation [144](#)

"Home lights" [93](#)

Homepage [4](#)

Horn [8](#)

Hot exhaust system [122](#)

"Hour memo" [80](#)

Hydraulic brake assist, see
Dynamic Brake Control
DBC [84](#)

I

ID3 tag, see Information on the track [171](#)

iDrive [14](#)

– assistance window [18](#)

– automatic air-conditioning system [101](#)

– automatic air conditioning with extended range of features [102](#)

– brightness adjustment [80](#)

– changing date and time [79](#)

– changing language [81](#)

– changing settings [79](#)

– changing units of measurement and form of expression [81](#)

– confirming a selection or input [17](#)

– controller [14](#)

– controls [14](#)

– displays, menus [15](#)

– selecting a menu item [17](#)

– start menu [15](#)

– status information [18](#)

– switching menu pages [17](#)

– symbols [16](#)

Ignition [56](#)

– switched off [56](#)

– switched on [56](#)

Ignition key, see Key/remote control [26](#)

Ignition key position 1, see
Radio readiness [56](#)

Ignition key position 2, see
Ignition on [56](#)

Ignition lock [56](#)

– starting the engine with comfort access [36](#)

Imitation leather, see booklet

Looking after your car

"Independent heater" [106](#)

Independent heater, see
Auxiliary heater [106](#)

"Independent mode" [106](#)

"Independent ventilation" [106](#)

Independent ventilation system

– indicator lamp [102](#)

– switching on and off directly [106](#)

Independent ventilation system/auxiliary heater [105](#)

– activating switch-on times [107](#)

– preselecting switch-on times [106](#)

– remote control [107](#)

Indicator and warning lamps [11](#)

– active steering [88](#)

– airbags [90](#)

– brake fluid [189](#)

– brake pads [189](#)

– DSC [11, 84](#)

– DTC [11, 85](#)

– fasten seat belts [47](#)

– fog lights [11, 96](#)

– Run Flat Indicator [88](#)

Indicators, see Flashing turn indicators [62](#)

Individual air distribution [99, 103](#)

Individually programmable buttons on the steering wheel [51](#)

Individual settings, see
Personal Profile [27](#)

Inflation pressures, see Tyre pressures [182](#)

"Info on destination" [141](#)

Information

– about another place [140](#)

– about the car's position [140](#)

– about the destination [140](#)

– on country [140](#)

"Information" in navigation [137, 140](#)

Infrared-reflecting windscreen, see Climatic comfort windscreen [128](#)

"Initialising..." [87](#)

Initialising

– radio, see Memorising stations [166](#)

– Run Flat Indicator [87](#)

– seat, mirror and steering wheel position memory [45](#)

– see Power failure [199](#)

– see Setting time and date [79](#)

Input map for destination [139](#)

Inside mirror [49, 50](#)

– automatic-dim [123](#)

Installed position

– CD changer [173](#)

– mobile phone [111](#)

– navigation disc drive [132](#)

Instructions from navigation system, see Spoken instructions [150](#)

Instrument cluster [10](#)

Instrument lighting [97](#)

Instrument panel, see Driving area [8](#)

Instrument panel lighting, see
Instrument lighting [97](#)

Integrated key [26](#)

Integrated universal remote control [109](#)

Interesting destination for navigation [140](#)

Interior light [97](#)

– switching on with the remote control [29](#)

Interior movement detector [35](#)

– switching off [35](#)

Interlock on automatic transmission [61](#)

Intermittent wiper operation **63**
 "Interm. time" **79**
 Internet site **4**
 ISOFIX child seat mountings **54**

J

Jack **196**
 – mounting points **197**
 Jacking points **197**
 "Journey computer" **74**
 Journey computer **74**
 Joystick, see iDrive **14**
 Jump-starting, see Starting with a flat battery **201**
 Junction input **136**

K

Kerb weight, see Weights **214**
 Key
 – key-specific settings, see Personal Profile **27**
 Keyless Go, see Comfort access **35**
 Keyless locking and unlocking, see Comfort access **35**
 Key Memory, see Personal Profile **27**
 Keys **26**
 Key switch for front passenger airbags **53**
 Kick-down
 – automatic transmission with Steptronic **62**
 – Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG **60**
 Knock control **181**

L

Language, altering on the control display **81**
 "Languages" **81**
 "Languages" in navigation **150**
 Lashings, see Securing the load **126**
 Last destinations, see Destinations list **140**
 "Last seat pos." **45**
 Laying up car out of use, see booklet Looking after your car
 Leather care, see booklet Looking after your car
 LED light-emitting diodes **195**
 Length, see Dimensions **212**
 Licence plate lights, bulb changing **195**
 "Light" **63, 93**
 Light
 – see Side lights/low-beam headlights **93**
 Light-emitting diodes LED **195**
 Lighter **113**
 Lighting
 – car, see Lights **93**
 – instruments **97**
 Lights
 – see High-beam headlights assistant **95**
 Lights and bulbs **192**
 Light switch **93**
 "Limit" **78**
 Limit, see Speed limit **78**
 List in navigation, see Address book **141**
 Load
 – securing in ski bag **115**
 Load area
 – enlarging **116**
 – opening/closing, see Tailgate **32**
 – opening from outside **33**
 – opening with remote control **29**

Load area cover, Touring **116**
 Load area lid, see Tailgate **32**
 Loads
 – car **125**
 – loading **125**
 – securing **126**
 – see Loads **125**
 – trailer **127**
 Lockable wheel studs, see Thieftproof wheel studs **198**
 "Lock button" **28**
 "Lock if no door opened" **31**
 Locking
 – adjusting acknowledgement signals **29**
 – from inside **31**
 – from outside **29**
 – without a key, see Comfort access **35**
 Locking without a key, see Comfort access **35**
 "LOGIC7 room acoustics", tone control **162**
 Long-life oils, see Alternative oil grades **188**
 Low-beam headlights **93**
 – automatic **94**
 – bulb changing **193**
 Low fuel level, see Fuel gauge **72**
 Low fuel level warning lamp **72**
 Luggage compartment
 – capacity **214**
 – emergency operation, see Opening manually **33**
 – locking separately **32**
 – opening/closing, see Luggage compartment lid/tailgate **31**
 – opening from inside **31, 32**
 – opening from outside **31**
 – opening with remote control **29**
 – remote control **29**
 – volume **214**
 Luggage compartment cover, see Load area cover **116**

Luggage compartment lid [31](#)

- deadlocking separately [32](#)
- emergency operation, see Manual operation [32](#)
- opening from inside [31](#)
- opening from outside [31](#)
- unlocking and locking from inside [30](#)
- unlocking manually [32](#)

Luggage compartment lid/ tailgate [31](#)

- unlocking and locking from inside [30](#)

"Luggage compartment lid opening" [33](#)

Luggage net, see Partition net [116](#)

Luggage rack, see Roof rack [126](#)

Lumbar support [44](#)

LW waveband [164](#)

M

M+S tyres, see Winter tyres [184](#)

Maintenance

- see Service Booklet
- see Service requirements [74](#)

Maintenance system [190](#)

Manual air distribution [99](#), [103](#)

"Manual frequency selection" for radio [165](#)

Manual gearbox [58](#)

Manual operation

- automatic transmission with Steptronic [62](#)
- door lock [30](#)
- driver's door [30](#)
- fuel filler flap [180](#)
- glass roof [39](#)
- luggage compartment lid [32](#)
- panorama glass roof [40](#)
- selector lever interlock, automatic transmission [62](#)
- Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG [60](#)
- tailgate [32](#)

"Map, indicating dir. of travel" [149](#)

Map for navigation

- changing scale [149](#)
- destination input [139](#)

"Map north-oriented" [149](#)

Map view [149](#)

Master key, see Key/remote control [26](#)

Maximum cooling effect [104](#)

Maximum speed

- for winter tyres [184](#)

"Memorised stations" for radio [164](#)

Memorising radio stations [166](#)

Memory, see Seat, mirror and steering wheel position memory [45](#)

Menus, see iDrive [14](#)

Message list, traffic information [153](#)

Micro-filter [101](#), [105](#)

Microphone

- for telephone [12](#)
- for voice input system [12](#)

Mirrors [49](#)

- folding in and out [49](#)
- heating [49](#)
- memory, see Seat, mirror and steering wheel position memory [45](#)
- parking position [50](#)

Mobile communication equipment [123](#)

Mobile phone

- installed position, see Centre armrest [111](#)
- see separate Operating Instructions
- use inside the car, see Mobile communication equipment [123](#)

Mobile Service [201](#)

Modifications, technical, see For your own safety [5](#)

Monitor, see iDrive [14](#)

"Monitor on" [83](#)

Motorways, see Route criteria [145](#)

MP3, see Compressed audio files [169](#)

Multifunctional steering wheel, see Buttons on steering wheel [9](#)

Multi-function lever

- see Flashing turn indicators/ headlight flasher [62](#)

Multi-function switch

- see Wiper system [63](#)

Music tracks

- random play [173](#)
- sampling, scan [171](#)
- searching [171](#)

"Mute on / off" [51](#)

Muting TV [160](#)

MW, waveband [164](#)

N

"Navigation" [73](#), [134](#)

Navigation announcements, see Switching voice messaging on/off [150](#)

Navigation disc drive, installed position [132](#)

Navigation DVD [132](#)

Navigation system [132](#)

- address book [141](#)
- adjusting volume [151](#)
- avoiding sections of route [151](#)
- calling up [134](#)
- destination input [134](#)
- destinations list [140](#)
- displaying route [148](#)
- displaying the car's position [155](#)
- ending/resuming route guidance [147](#)
- entering a destination address manually [134](#), [138](#)
- last destinations [140](#)
- route guidance in assistance window [132](#)
- route list [149](#)
- searching for a special destination [140](#)
- selecting destination from map [139](#)
- selecting route criteria [145](#)
- selecting the destination via Information [140](#)
- spoken instructions [150](#)
- starting route guidance [147](#)
- switching off [147](#)

Neck restraints, see Head restraints [46](#)

"New address" in navigation [142](#)

"New destination" [134](#), [139](#)

New remote control [26](#)

- for auxiliary heater/independent ventilation system [108](#)

"New route for" [151](#)

New wheels and tyres [183](#)

"Next entertainment source" [51](#)

"Normal" for active backrest width adjustment [44](#)

North, direction of, in map view [149](#)

Nose weight [127](#), [217](#)

Nozzles, see Ventilation [100](#), [105](#)

Nylon rope, see Tow-starting and towing away [202](#)

O

OBD socket [191](#)

Octane numbers, see Fuel grade [181](#)

Odometer – distance recorder [71](#)

Oil

- additives, see Approved engine oils [188](#)
- alternative oil grades [188](#)
- approved engine oils [188](#)
- consumption, see Checking engine oil [186](#)
- dipstick [186](#)
- filling capacity [222](#)
- level [186](#)
- topping up, see Adding engine oil [187](#)

Oil change intervals

- see Service Booklet [190](#)
- see Service requirements [74](#)

Old batteries

- see Changing the battery [37](#)
- see Disposal [199](#)

"On-board Info" [73](#)

"On country" [140](#)

"On destination" [140](#)

"On location" [140](#)

Opening, see Unlocking [35](#)

Opening and closing

- comfort access [35](#)
- from inside [30](#)
- from outside [28](#)
- panorama glass roof [40](#)
- via the door lock [30](#)
- via the remote control [28](#)

Opening without a key, see Comfort access [35](#)

Orientation menu, see Start menu [15](#)

"Other place" in navigation [140](#)

Outlets for automatic air conditioning system [98](#)

Outlet slots, see Air vents [98](#)

Output, see Engine data [208](#)

Outside mirrors

- automatic heating [49](#)
- folding in and out [49](#)
- passenger-side mirror tilt-down [50](#)
- towing a trailer [127](#)

Outside temperature display [71](#)

- changing unit of measurement [81](#)
- in computer [81](#)

Overriding selector lever interlock [62](#)

P

Paintwork care, see booklet Looking after your car

Panic mode [29](#)

Panorama glass roof [39](#)

- manual operation [40](#)

Park Distance Control PDC [82](#)

Parking aid, see Park Distance Control PDC [82](#)

Parking assistant, see Park Distance Control PDC [82](#)

Parking brake, see Handbrake [58](#)

Parking lights [95](#)

- bulb changing [193](#)

Parking position [50](#)

Particle filter, see Diesel particle filter [123](#)

Partition net [116](#)

Parts and accessories [5](#)

Passenger-side mirror tilt-down [50](#)

"PDC" [83](#)

PDC, see Park Distance Control [82](#)

Performance [220](#)

Personal Profile [27](#)

"Perspective" [149](#)

Petrol, see Fuel grade [181](#)
 Petrol consumption, see Fuel consumption [209](#)
 "Picture" [176](#), [177](#)
 Pivoting headlights, see Adaptive Head Light [94](#)
 Placing a call, see Telephone Operating Instructions
 "Plan detour" [154](#)
 Plasters, see First aid pouch [201](#)
 Plastic, care, see booklet Looking after your car
 "Play" for audio mode [170](#)
 Pollen
 – see Micro-filter [101](#)
 – see Micro-filter/Activated charcoal filter [105](#)
 Position
 – displaying [155](#)
 – saving [142](#)
 Power failure [199](#)
 Preheating, see Auxiliary heater [106](#)
 Preheating, see Cars with diesel engine [57](#)
 Preselecting switch-on times for independent ventilation system/auxiliary heater [106](#)
 Pressure, tyres [182](#)
 Pressure monitoring, see Run Flat Indicator [87](#)
 Pressure monitoring for tyres, see Run Flat Indicator [87](#)
 Programmable buttons on steering wheel [51](#)
 Protective function, see Trap protection
 – glass roof, electric [39](#)
 – panorama glass roof [40](#)
 – windows [37](#)
 Punctures
 – compact wheel [197](#)
 – Run Flat Indicator [87](#), [88](#)
 – run-flat tyres [183](#)

R

Radio
 – Autostore [165](#)
 – calling up stations [164](#)
 – controls [160](#)
 – memorising stations [166](#)
 – sampling stations [165](#)
 – selecting frequency manually [165](#)
 – selecting waveband [160](#), [164](#)
 – station search [165](#)
 – stations with best reception [165](#)
 – switching on/off [160](#)
 – tone control [161](#)
 – traffic reports [168](#)
 – volume control [161](#)
 Radio-control key, see Key/remote control [26](#)
 Radio position, see Radio readiness [56](#)
 Radio readiness [56](#)
 – switched off [56](#)
 – switched on [56](#)
 – with comfort access [36](#)
 Rain sensor [63](#)
 Random
 – CD changer [173](#)
 – CD player [173](#)
 "Random", random generator [173](#)
 "Random all" for audio mode [173](#)
 "Random directory" for audio mode [173](#)
 Range [72](#)
 Rapeseed methyl ester RME [181](#)
 "RDS" [167](#)
 Reading lights [97](#)
 Rear armrest, see Centre armrest, rear [114](#)
 Rear fog lights [97](#)
 – bulb changing [194](#)
 – indicator lamp [11](#), [97](#)
 Rear lights [194](#)
 – bulb changing [194](#)
 Rear power socket [114](#)
 Rear seat back, folding [114](#), [116](#)
 Rear seats
 – folding over seat backs [114](#), [116](#)
 – head restraint adjustment [47](#)
 – heating [48](#)
 Rear window
 – heater [100](#), [103](#)
 – opening and closing on the Touring [32](#)
 – renewing wiper blade [192](#)
 – sun blind, see Roller sun blinds [110](#)
 – window wiper on Touring [64](#)
 Recently used destinations [140](#)
 Reception
 – quality [167](#)
 – radio stations [167](#)
 – regional programme [165](#), [176](#)
 – TV channels [176](#)
 Rechargeable hand lamp [111](#)
 Recirculated-air mode [100](#), [104](#)
 – air recirculation [104](#)
 – Automatic Air Recirculation Control AUC [104](#)
 Recirculation of air
 – Automatic Air Recirculation Control AUC [104](#)
 Reclining seat, see Seat back [43](#)
 Recycling [191](#)
 Reflecting tail lights, see Rear lights [194](#)
 Refuelling [180](#)
 Releasing
 – engine compartment lid [185](#)
 Remote control [26](#)
 – changing the battery [37](#)
 – comfort access [35](#)
 – faults [30](#), [37](#)
 – garage door opener [109](#)
 – luggage compartment lid [29](#)
 – tailgate [29](#)

Remote control for
 independent ventilation
 system/auxiliary heater **107**
 – battery, changing **108**
 – new remote control **108**
 Renewing tyres **183**
 "Repeat directory" for audio
 mode **172**
 "Repeat" for audio mode **172**
 "Repeat track" for audio
 mode **172**
 Replacement fuses **199**
 Replacement remote
 control **26**
 Reservoir for cleaning
 systems **64**
 Reset, see Resetting the tone
 settings **163**
 "Reset" for stopwatch **78**
 "Reset" for tone settings **163**
 Residual distance, see
 Range **72**
 Residual heat **104**
 Restraint systems
 – for children **53**
 – see Seat belts **47**
 Retreaded tyres **183**
 Returning end-of-life
 vehicles, see Recycling **191**
 Reverse
 – automatic transmission with
 Steptronic **61**
 – CD player **173**
 – manual gearbox **59**
 Reverse gear
 – Sequential Manual Gearbox
 SMG **59**
 Reversing light, see Reverse
 gear
 – bulb changing **194**
 Reversing lights, see Reverse
 gear **59**
 Revolution counter **71**
 "Rhomb button" **51**
 RME, see Rapeseed methyl
 ester **181**

Road map **149**
 Roller cover
 – load area cover **116**
 Roller cover, see Load area
 cover, Touring **116**
 Roller sun blinds **110**
 RON, see Fuel grade **181**
 Roof load **214**
 Roof rack **126**
 Rope, see Tow-starting and
 towing away **202**
 Rotary/pushbutton control,
 see iDrive **14**
 Route **145**
 – altering **145, 151**
 – avoiding sections **151**
 – displaying **148**
 – displaying arrow view **148**
 – displaying map **149**
 – displaying places **149**
 – list **149**
 – selecting **145**
 – selecting criteria **145**
 Route, see Displaying
 route **148**
 "Route criteria",
 changing **145**
 Route guidance **147**
 – altering route
 specifications **145**
 – avoiding sections of
 route **151**
 – changing course of a
 route **151**
 – displaying routes **148**
 – distance and arrival
 time **147**
 – ending/resuming **147**
 – interrupting **147**
 – interrupting spoken
 instructions **52**
 – spoken instructions **150**
 – starting **147**
 – volume of spoken
 instructions **151**
 Route instructions, see
 Spoken instructions **150**

Route map, see Map view **149**
 Route selection **145**
 "Route via" **151**
 "RPA" **87**
 RPA, see Run Flat
 Indicator **87**
 RSC, see Run-flat tyres **183**
 Run Flat Indicator **87**
 – false alarms **87**
 – initialising the system **87**
 – snow chains **184**
 – system limits **87**
 – warning lamp **88**
 Run-flat tyres **183**
 – flat tyre **88**
 – new tyres **183**
 – new wheels and tyres **183**
 – renewing tyres **184**
 – resuming a journey with a
 damaged tyre **88**
 – tyre pressure **182**
 Running in **122**

S

Safe braking **124**
 Safe seated position **42**
 – with airbags **42**
 – with head restraints **42**
 – with seat belt **42**
 Safety **5**
 Safety lock buttons on doors,
 see Locking **31**
 Safety switch for rear
 windows **38**
 Safety systems
 – airbags **90**
 – Anti-lock Brake System
 ABS **83**
 – Dynamic Stability Control
 DSC **84**
 – seat belts **47**
 "Save address" in
 navigation **142**

"Save current destination" [144](#)
 "Save" for radio [166](#)
 Saving the car's position [142](#)
 "Scan"
 – sampling stations [165](#)
 – sampling tracks [171](#)
 "Scan all" for audio mode [172](#)
 "Scan directory" for audio mode [172](#)
 "Schedule date for service" [75](#)
 Screen, see iDrive [14](#)
 Screw thread for towing eye [203](#)
 Search
 – CD changer [171](#)
 – CD player [171](#)
 – radio [165](#)
 Seat belts [47](#)
 – damage [48](#)
 – safe seated position [42](#)
 – warning lamp [47](#)
 "Seat-heating distribution" [48](#)
 Seats [43](#)
 – active backrest width adjustment [44](#)
 – adjusting [43](#)
 – easy entry/exit [44](#)
 – electrical adjustment [43](#)
 – heating [48](#)
 – lumbar support [44](#)
 – manual adjustment [43](#)
 – memory, see Seat, mirror and steering wheel position memory [45](#)
 – position memory [45](#)
 – safe seated position [42](#)
 – thigh support [43, 44](#)
 – ventilation, see Active seat ventilation [48](#)
 Sections of route, altering [151](#)
 Securing luggage
 – in ski bag, see Securing the load [115](#)
 – see Securing the load [126](#)
 Securing the load [126](#)
 Selecting audio sources, see Operation via iDrive [160](#)

Selecting distance with Active Cruise Control [67](#)
 Selecting menu items [17](#)
 Selecting the route [145](#)
 Selection options in navigation [145](#)
 Select "Lock after moving off" [31](#)
 Selector lever
 – automatic transmission with Steptronic [61](#)
 – manual gearbox [58](#)
 – Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG [59](#)
 Selector lever interlock, see Shiftlock
 – automatic transmission with Steptronic [61](#)
 – Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG [59](#)
 Selector lever positions
 – automatic transmission with Steptronic [61](#)
 – manual gearbox [58](#)
 – Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG [59](#)
 Self-levelling suspension [86](#)
 Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG [59](#)
 – acceleration assistant [61](#)
 – Dynamic Driving Control [60](#)
 – gear indicator [59](#)
 – kick-down [60](#)
 – running in [122](#)
 – towing away [203](#)
 – tow-starting [204](#)
 "Service" [75, 187](#)
 Service, see Mobile Service [201](#)
 Service Booklet [190](#)
 Service car, see Mobile Service [201](#)
 Service Interval indicator, see Service requirements [74](#)
 "Service requirements" [75, 187](#)
 Service requirements [74](#)
 – see also Condition Based Service CBS [190](#)

"Set date" [80](#)
 "Set" for audio mode [160](#)
 "Set" for journey computer [74](#)
 "Set time" [80](#)
 Settings
 – clock, 12h/24h mode [80](#)
 – configuring, see Personal Profile [27](#)
 Setting speed limit [78](#)
 Setting time, see Preselecting switch-on time [106](#)
 "Set tyre pressure" [87](#)
 Shiftlock
 – automatic transmission with Steptronic [61](#)
 – Sequential Manual Gearbox SMG [59](#)
 Shift paddles [60](#)
 Short commands for the voice input system [223](#)
 "Short route" in navigation [145](#)
 Short route in navigation, see Selecting route [145](#)
 Shoulder support [44](#)
 "Show destination position" [139](#)
 "Show vehicle position" [139](#)
 Side airbags [90](#)
 Side flashing turn indicators, changing bulb [194](#)
 Side lights [93](#)
 – bulb changing [193](#)
 Side lights/low-beam headlights
 – bulb changing [193](#)
 Side window blinds, see Roller sun blinds [110](#)
 Signal horn, see Horn [8](#)
 Ski bag [115](#)
 Sliding/tilt sunroof
 – see Panorama glass roof [39](#)
 Slippery roads, see Outside temperature warning [71](#)
 SMG, see Sequential Manual Gearbox [59](#)
 Smokers' package, see Front ashtray [112](#)
 Snow chains [184](#)

- Socket for On-Board Diagnosis [191](#)
- Sockets, see Connecting electrical appliances [113](#)
- Song search on CD, see Sampling tracks [171](#)
- Soot particle filter, see Diesel particle filter [123](#)
- SOS, see Making an emergency call [200](#)
- Spare fuses [199](#)
- Spare key [26](#)
 - adapter [26](#)
- Spare wheel, see Changing a wheel [196](#)
- Spare wheel, see Compact wheel [197](#)
- Special oils, see Approved engine oils [188](#)
- Speed
 - when towing a trailer [128](#)
 - with compact wheel [198](#)
- "Speed dependent volume", tone control [162](#)
- Speed-dependent volume control [162](#)
- Speed limit
 - when towing a trailer [128](#)
 - with winter tyres [184](#)
- Speedometer [10](#)
- Spoken instructions for navigation system [150](#)
 - muting [52](#)
 - repeating [52](#), [150](#)
 - switching on/off [52](#), [150](#)
 - volume control [151](#)
- "Sport" for active backrest width adjustment [44](#)
- Sport program
 - automatic transmission with Steptronic [62](#)
 - see Dynamic Driving Control [60](#)
- Stability control, see Driving stability control systems [83](#)
- "Star button" [51](#)
- Start/stop button [56](#)
- "Start" for stopwatch [78](#)
- "Start guidance" [137](#)
- Starting assistance [123](#)
- Starting difficulties
 - see Exceptional starting conditions [57](#)
 - starting with a flat battery [201](#)
- Starting on uphill gradients, see Starting assistance [123](#)
- Starting with a flat battery [201](#)
- Start menu, iDrive [15](#)
- "Start route guidance" [139](#)
- "Stat. exhaust. insp." [75](#)
- Station, see Radio [164](#)
- "Status" [75](#)
- Status at time of printing [5](#)
- "Stat. vehicle insp." [75](#)
- Steering wheel
 - adjusting [50](#)
 - buttons on steering wheel [9](#)
 - easy entry/exit [51](#)
 - heating [51](#)
 - lock [56](#)
 - memory, see Seat, mirror, and steering wheel position memory [45](#)
 - programmable buttons [51](#)
- "Steering wheel buttons" [51](#)
- Steering with variable ratio, see Active steering [88](#)
- Steptronic, see Automatic transmission with Steptronic [61](#)
- Sticking plasters, see First aid pouch [201](#)
- "Stop" for stopwatch [79](#)
- Stop light, see Rear lights [194](#)
 - bulb changing [194](#)
- Stopping
 - car [58](#)
 - engine [58](#)
- "Stopwatch" [78](#)
- Stopwatch [78](#)
- Storage compartments [112](#)
- Storage package [117](#)
- Storing tyres [184](#)
- Stowage
 - see Storage compartments [112](#)
- "Street" in destination input [136](#)
- Summer tyres, see Wheels and tyres [182](#)
- Sun roof
 - see Glass roof, electric [38](#)
- Switches, see Driving area [8](#)
- Switch for front passenger airbags [53](#)
- Switching cooling function on and off [100](#), [104](#)
- Switching on/off
 - audio [160](#)
 - CD changer [160](#)
 - CD player [160](#)
 - radio [160](#)
 - TV [175](#)
- Switching on hour signal [80](#)
- Switching sound output for entertainment systems on/off [161](#)
- "Switch-on times" [107](#)
- SW waveband [164](#)
- Symbols [4](#)
 - indicator and warning lamps [11](#)
 - navigation system [153](#)
 - traffic info with navigation system [152](#)

T

- Tachometer, see Speedometer [10](#)
- Tailgate
 - automatic operation [33](#)
 - opening from inside, Touring [32](#)
- Tail lights, see Rear lights [194](#)
- Tank capacity, see Filling capacities [222](#)
- Technical data [208](#)
- Technical modifications [5](#)
- Telephone, see separate Operating Instructions
- "Telephone list" [51](#)
- Telephone reception signal level, see Status information [18](#)

- Television, see TV [175](#)
- Temperature
 - adjustment for the automatic air conditioning system [99](#), [103](#)
 - adjustment for the upper body area [101](#), [103](#)
 - of coolant, see Coolant temperature [71](#)
- Temperature display
 - outside temperature [71](#)
 - setting unit of measurement [81](#)
 - temperature warning [71](#)
- Temperature warning [71](#)
- Tensioning straps, see Storage package [117](#)
- "Text language" [81](#)
- "Theatre" [163](#)
- Theft protection for wheel studs, see Thieftproof wheel studs [198](#)
- Third brake light, see Centre brake light [195](#)
- Through-loading system [114](#)
- Tightening torque of wheel studs, see After fitting [198](#)
- Tilt alarm sensor, switching off [35](#)
- "Time format" [80](#)
- Timekeeping, see Stopwatch [78](#)
- Timer, see Preselecting switch-on time [106](#)
- "Timer 1" for auxiliary heater/ independent ventilation system [107](#)
- "Timer 2" for auxiliary heater/ independent ventilation system [107](#)
- "TMC" [152](#)
- "TMC AUTO" [152](#)
- TMC stations, see Traffic information [152](#)
- "Tone" [161](#)
- "Tone", tone control [161](#)
- Tone for audio mode
 - adjusting [161](#)
 - central setting [163](#)
- Tone for audio mode, adjustment, see Tone control [161](#)
- Toolkit [192](#)
- Tools, see Toolkit [192](#)
- Top speed
 - performance [220](#)
 - with compact wheel [198](#)
- Torch, see Rechargeable hand lamp [111](#)
- Torque
 - engine [208](#)
 - wheel studs, see After fitting [198](#)
- Touring
 - automatic tailgate operation [33](#)
 - compartments in load area [117](#)
 - enlarging load area [116](#)
 - headlight beam throw adjustment [95](#)
 - load area cover [116](#)
 - opening rear window [32](#)
 - opening tailgate [32](#)
 - panorama glass roof [39](#)
 - partition net [116](#)
 - power socket in load area [114](#)
 - rear lights, bulb changing [194](#)
 - rear window wiper [64](#)
 - rear wiper, renewing wiper blade [192](#)
 - releasing fuel filler flap in the event of an electrical fault [180](#)
 - roller cover, see Load area cover [116](#)
 - roller cover for load area, see Load area cover [116](#)
 - self-levelling suspension [86](#)
 - storage package [117](#)
- Towing a trailer [127](#)
- Towing away [202](#)
- Towing eyes [202](#)
- Towing eye [202](#)
- Tow-starting [202](#), [204](#)
- "TP" [168](#)
- "TP AUTO" [168](#)
- TP function [168](#)
- Track width, see Dimensions [212](#)
- Traction aid, see Dynamic Stability Control DSC [84](#)
- "Traffic information" [152](#)
- Traffic information [152](#)
 - calling up [153](#)
 - during route guidance [154](#)
 - in the map view [154](#)
 - selecting [152](#)
 - switching on announcements [168](#)
- "Traffic information settings" [152](#), [168](#)
- Traffic jams
 - switching on traffic information announcements [168](#)
- Traffic reports [168](#)
 - switching on/off [168](#)
 - TMC stations [152](#)
 - TP [168](#)
 - volume control [161](#)
- Trailer pulling, see Towing a trailer [127](#)
- Trailer towing [127](#)
 - see Technical data [217](#)
 - towing loads and gross weight [217](#)
- Transmission
 - automatic transmission with Steptronic [61](#)
- Transporting children [53](#)
- Transport securing equipment, see Securing the load [126](#)
- Trap protection
 - electric windows [37](#)
 - glass roof, electric [39](#)
 - panorama glass roof [40](#)
- Tread depth, see Minimum tread depth [182](#)
- "Treble", tone control [162](#)
- Treble, tone control [162](#)
- Trip distance recorder [71](#)
- "Triple turn signal activation" [63](#), [94](#)

Turning circle, see
Dimensions [212](#)

Turning up and down
automatically, see High-
beam headlights
assistant [95](#)

"TV" [160](#), [175](#)

TV [175](#)

- calling up [175](#)
- changing channel [175](#)
- changing standard [176](#)
- controls [160](#)
- receivable channels [176](#)
- switching on/off [160](#)
- tone control [161](#)
- volume [160](#)

TV contrast [176](#)

"TV standard" [177](#)

Two-stage brake lights [89](#)

Tyre changing [183](#)

- changing a wheel [196](#)
- new wheels and tyres [183](#)

Tyre pressure

- loss [88](#)

Tyre pressure monitoring, see
Run Flat Indicator [87](#)

Tyre pressures [182](#)

- for heavy loads and trailer
towing [182](#)

Tyres

- age [183](#)
- air loss [88](#)
- changing [196](#)
- condition [182](#)
- damage [182](#)
- new wheels and tyres [183](#)
- pressure monitoring [87](#)
- pressures [182](#)
- punctures, see Changing a
wheel [196](#)
- renewing [183](#)
- retreaded [183](#)
- run-flat [183](#)
- running-in [122](#)
- size [182](#)
- tread [182](#)
- wear indicators [182](#)
- wheel/tyre combination [183](#)
- winter tyres [184](#)

U

Underseal, see booklet
Looking after your car

"Units" [81](#)

Units of measurement

- average fuel
consumption [81](#)
- temperature [81](#)

Universal garage door opener,
see Integrated universal
remote control [109](#)

Universal remote control [109](#)

Unlocking

- without a key, see Comfort
access [35](#)

Unlocking and locking doors

- from inside [30](#), [31](#)
- from outside [28](#)
- setting confirmation
signals [29](#)

"Use current location as
address" [142](#), [144](#)

"Use motorways" in
navigation [145](#)

V

Vehicle

- returning, see
Recycling [191](#)

Vehicle battery, see Car
battery [198](#)

Vehicle identification number,
see Engine
compartment [186](#)

"Vehicle position" [155](#)

Vehicle recycling, see
Recycling [191](#)

"Vehicle settings", for
unlocking [28](#)

Ventilation [100](#), [105](#)

- draught-free [101](#), [105](#)
- for rear [101](#), [105](#)
- with engine off [105](#)

Ventilation for rear [101](#), [105](#)

Venting

- see Ventilation [100](#), [105](#)

VHF waveband [164](#)

Voice, see Route guidance by
spoken instructions [150](#)

Voice input system [20](#)

- short commands [223](#)

"Voice output of nav.
system" [51](#)

"Voice output of nav. system
on" [150](#)

Volume

- audio sources [160](#)
- TV [160](#)

Volume control [160](#)

- speed-dependent
adjustment [162](#)
- spoken instructions [151](#)
- traffic reports [161](#)

Volume distribution for audio
mode

- front/rear [162](#)
- right/left [162](#)

W

Wading [123](#)

Warning lamps, see Indicator
and warning lamps [11](#)

Warning messages, see
Check Control [76](#)

Warning triangle [200](#)

Washer fluid [64](#)

- reservoir capacity [64](#)

Washer fluid reservoir [64](#)

Washer jets, see Windscreen
washer jets [64](#)

Washing the car, see booklet
Looking after your car

Water on roads, see
Wading [123](#)

Waveband for radio [164](#)

Wear indicators in the tyres,
see Minimum tread
depth [182](#)

Weights [214](#)

Wheel/tyre combination, see
New wheels and tyres [183](#)

Wheel/tyre renewal, see New
wheels and tyres [183](#)

Wheelbase, see
Dimensions [212](#)

Wheel chock [196](#)
 Wheels and tyres [182](#)
 Wheelslip control, see
 Dynamic Stability Control
 DSC [84](#)
 Wheel studs [197](#)
 – keys [196](#)
 – thiefproof [198](#)
 – tightening torque, see After
 fitting [198](#)
 Width, see Dimensions [212](#)
 Windows [37](#)
 – comfort operation [28](#)
 – comfort operation from
 outside [30](#)
 – comfort operation with
 comfort access [36](#)
 – rear window, Touring [32](#)
 – safety switch [38](#)
 Windscreen
 – cleaning, see Wiper
 system [64](#)
 – defrosting, see Defrosting
 windows [100](#), [103](#)
 – infrared reflecting, see
 Climatic comfort
 windscreen [128](#)
 – with displays, see Head-Up
 Display [91](#)
 Windscreen washer
 – see Wiper system [63](#)
 – windscreen washer jets [64](#)
 Windscreen wipers, see
 Wiper system
 – renewing wiper blades [192](#)
 Winter tyres [184](#)
 – speed limit [78](#)
 – tyre storage [184](#)
 Wiper blades, renewing [192](#)
 Wiper system [63](#)
 – rain sensor [63](#)
 – washer fluid [64](#)
 – windscreen washer jets [64](#)
 Wordmatch principle for
 navigation [146](#)
 Working in the engine
 compartment [185](#)
 Wrench/screwdriver, see
 Toolkit [192](#)

X

xDrive [85](#)
 Xenon headlights [95](#), [193](#)
 – bulb changing [193](#)
 – driving on left/right [124](#)
 – dynamic headlight beam
 throw adjustment [95](#)

Y

Your individual car [5](#)

Refuelling

So that you always have access to the data you need when refuelling, you are recommended to enter the relevant figures for your car in the table provided below. Use the index to find the information you need.

Fuel

Designation

Enter your preferred grade of fuel here.

Engine oil

Grade

Diesel engines:
The quantity of oil between the mid-points of the two dipstick marks is approx. 1.5 litres, approx. 2.6 pints.

Tyre pressures

| | Summer tyres | | Winter tyres | |
|-----------------------------|--------------|------|--------------|------|
| | front | rear | front | rear |
| Up to 4 persons | | | | |
| 5 persons or 4 plus luggage | | | | |

More about BMW

www.bmw.com



The Ultimate
Driving Machine

01 41 0 159 725 en

